



lincolnowner.com



lincolncanada.com



September 2014
First Printing
Owner's Manual
Lincoln MKS
Litho in U.S.A.

FASJ19A321AA



Information Provided by:
DEALER
E-PROCESS

2015 MKS Owner's Manual



2015 MKS

Owner's Manual



THE LINCOLN MOTOR COMPANY

The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2014

All rights reserved.

Part Number: 20140828181351



Information Provided by:
DEALER
E - P R O C E S S



Information Provided by:
DEALER
E-PROCESS

Table of Contents

Introduction

About This Manual.....	7
Symbols Glossary.....	7
Data Recording.....	9
California Proposition 65.....	11
Perchlorate.....	11
Lincoln Automotive Financial Services.....	11
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	11
Special Notices.....	12
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	12
Export Unique Options.....	13

Child Safety

General Information.....	14
Installing Child Seats.....	16
Booster Seats.....	21
Child Seat Positioning.....	24
Child Safety Locks.....	25

Safety Belts

Principle of Operation.....	27
Fastening the Safety Belts.....	28
Safety Belt Height Adjustment.....	30
Safety Belt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime.....	31
Safety Belt Minder.....	32

Child Restraint and Safety Belt Maintenance.....	33
--	----

Personal Safety System™

Personal Safety System™.....	35
------------------------------	----

Supplementary Restraints System

Principle of Operation.....	36
Driver and Passenger Airbags.....	37
Front Passenger Sensing System.....	38
Side Airbags.....	40
Safety Canopy™.....	41
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....	43
Airbag Disposal.....	44

Keys and Remote Controls

General Information on Radio Frequencies.....	45
Remote Control.....	46
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	48

MyKey™

Principle of Operation.....	50
Creating a MyKey.....	51
Clearing All MyKeys.....	51

Checking MyKey System Status.....	53
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems.....	54
MyKey Troubleshooting.....	54

Locks

Locking and Unlocking.....	56
Keyless Entry.....	59
Interior Luggage Compartment Release.....	61

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System.....	63
Anti-Theft Alarm.....	64

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	65
Audio Control.....	65
Voice Control.....	66
Cruise Control.....	66
Information Display Control.....	67
Heated Steering Wheel.....	67

Pedals

Adjusting the Pedals.....	68
---------------------------	----



Table of Contents

Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wipers.....	69
Autowipers.....	69
Windshield Washers.....	70

Lighting

Lighting Control.....	71
Autolamps.....	71
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	72
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	73
Daytime Running Lamps.....	73
Automatic High Beam Control.....	74
Front Fog Lamps.....	75
Adaptive Headlamps.....	75
Direction Indicators.....	76
Interior Lamps.....	76
Ambient Lighting.....	77

Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows.....	78
Exterior Mirrors.....	79
Interior Mirror.....	80
Sun Visors.....	81
Sun Shades.....	81
Moonroof.....	81

Instrument Cluster

Gauges.....	83
Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	84
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	86

Information Displays

General Information.....	88
Information Messages.....	94

Climate Control

Automatic Climate Control.....	105
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate.....	106
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	107
Cabin Air Filter.....	108
Remote Start.....	108

Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position.....	109
Head Restraints.....	109
Power Seats.....	111
Memory Function.....	114
Climate Controlled Seats.....	115
Rear Seat Armrest.....	117

Universal Garage Door Opener

Universal Garage Door Opener.....	119
-----------------------------------	-----

Auxiliary Power Points

Auxiliary Power Points.....	123
-----------------------------	-----

Storage Compartments

Center Console.....	125
Overhead Console.....	125

Starting and Stopping the Engine

General Information.....	126
Keyless Starting.....	126
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	127
Engine Block Heater.....	129

Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions.....	131
Fuel Quality.....	132
Running Out of Fuel.....	132
Refueling.....	134
Fuel Consumption.....	135
Emission Control System.....	136

Table of Contents

Transmission

Automatic Transmission.....139

All-Wheel Drive

Using All-Wheel Drive.....142

Brakes

General Information.....147

Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock
Brakes.....147

Parking Brake.....148

Hill Start Assist.....148

Traction Control

Principle of Operation.....150

Using Traction Control.....150

Stability Control

Principle of Operation.....151

Using Stability Control.....152

Parking Aids

Parking Aid.....153

Active Park Assist.....155

Rear View Camera.....160

Cruise Control

Principle of Operation.....163

Using Cruise Control.....163

Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....164

Driving Aids

Driver Alert.....171

Lane Keeping System.....172

Blind Spot Information System.....176

Steering.....181

Collision Warning System.....182

Drive Control.....185

Load Carrying

Load Limit.....187

Towing

Towing a Trailer.....198

Recommended Towing Weights.....199

Essential Towing Checks.....200

Transporting the Vehicle.....202

Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....202

Driving Hints

Breaking-In.....204

Economical Driving.....204

Driving Through Water.....204

Floor Mats.....205

Roadside Emergencies

Roadside Assistance.....207

Hazard Warning Flashers.....208

Fuel Shutoff.....208

Jump Starting the Vehicle.....209

Post-Crash Alert System.....211

Customer Assistance

Getting the Services You Need.....212

In California (U.S. Only).....213

The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto
Line Program (U.S. Only).....214

Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program
(Canada Only).....215

Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and
Canada.....215

Ordering Additional Owner's
Literature.....216

Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only).....217

Reporting Safety Defects (Canada
Only).....217

Fuses

Fuse Specification Chart.....218



Table of Contents

Changing a Fuse.....	232
----------------------	-----

Maintenance

General Information.....	234
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	234
Under Hood Overview - 3.5L Ecoboost™.....	236
Under Hood Overview - 3.7L.....	238
Engine Oil Dipstick.....	239
Engine Oil Check.....	239
Oil Change Indicator Reset.....	240
Engine Coolant Check.....	240
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check.....	244
Brake Fluid Check.....	247
Power Steering Fluid Check.....	247
Washer Fluid Check.....	248
Fuel Filter.....	248
Changing the 12V Battery.....	248
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	250
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	250
Adjusting the Headlamps.....	251
Changing a Bulb.....	252
Bulb Specification Chart.....	253
Changing the Engine Air Filter.....	255

Vehicle Care

General Information.....	257
Cleaning Products.....	257
Cleaning the Exterior.....	257
Waxing.....	258
Cleaning the Engine.....	258
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades.....	259
Cleaning the Interior.....	259
Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens.....	260
Cleaning Leather Seats.....	260
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	261
Cleaning the Alloy Wheels.....	261
Vehicle Storage.....	262

Wheels and Tires

Tire Care.....	264
Using Snow Chains.....	279
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	279
Changing a Road Wheel.....	283
Technical Specifications.....	288

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Specifications.....	290
Motorcraft Parts.....	291

Vehicle Identification Number.....	291
Vehicle Certification Label.....	292
Transmission Code Designation.....	293
Technical Specifications.....	294

Audio System

General Information.....	299
Audio Unit.....	300
Media Hub.....	302

MyLincoln Touch™

General Information.....	303
Settings.....	313
Entertainment.....	325
Phone.....	344
Information.....	351
Climate.....	360
Navigation.....	364

Accessories

Accessories.....	373
------------------	-----

Appendices

End User License Agreement.....	375
---------------------------------	-----



Table of Contents

Extended Service Plan (ESP)

Extended Service Plan (ESP).....390

Scheduled Maintenance

General Maintenance Information.....392

Normal Scheduled Maintenance.....396

Special Operating Conditions Scheduled
Maintenance.....399

Scheduled Maintenance Record.....402



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P R O C E S S



Information Provided by:
DEALER
E - PROCESS

Introduction

ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Lincoln. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about it, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury.

We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to your vehicle.*

Note: *Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.*

Note: *Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

Note: *Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.*

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

- A Right-hand side
- B Left-hand side

Protecting the Environment

You must play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Safety alert



See Owner's Manual



Air conditioning system



Anti-lock braking system



Avoid smoking, flames or sparks































Battery



Information Provided by:

DEALER
PROCESS

Introduction

	Battery acid		Do not open when hot		Front fog lamps
	Brake fluid - non petroleum based		Engine air filter		Fuel pump reset
	Brake system		Engine coolant		Fuse compartment
	Cabin air filter		Engine coolant temperature		Hazard warning flashers
	Check fuel cap		Engine oil		Heated rear window
	Child safety door lock or unlock		Explosive gas		Heated windshield
	Child seat lower anchor		Fan warning		Interior luggage compartment release
	Child seat tether anchor		Fasten safety belt		Jack
	Cruise control		Front airbag		Keep out of reach of children
					Lighting control

Introduction



Low tire pressure warning



Maintain correct fluid level



Note operating instructions



Panic alarm



Parking aid



Parking brake



Power steering fluid



Power windows front/rear



Power window lockout



Service engine soon



Side airbag



Shield the eyes



Stability control



Windshield wash and wipe

DATA RECORDING

Service Data Recording

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access or

share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. Additionally, when your vehicle is in for service or repair, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access or share among them data for vehicle improvement purposes. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use the SYNC Vehicle Health Report, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used for any purpose. See **MyLincoln Touch™** (page 303).

Event Data Recording

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

Introduction

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal; and
- How fast the vehicle was traveling; and
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded (see limitations regarding 911 Assist and Traffic, directions and Information privacy below). However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where

required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.

Note: *Including to the extent that any law pertaining to Event Data Recorders applies to SYNC or its features, please note the following: Once 911 Assist (if equipped) is enabled (set ON), 911 Assist may, through any paired and connected cell phone, disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or, in certain vehicles, the activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of being used to electronically or verbally provide to 911 operators the vehicle location (such as latitude and longitude), and/or other details about the vehicle or crash or personal information about the occupants to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the 911 Assist feature. See MyLincoln Touch™ (page 303).*

Introduction

Additionally, when you connect to Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped, U.S. only), the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction, and speed ("vehicle travel information"), only to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches that you request. If you do not want Ford or its vendors to receive this information, do not activate the service. For more information, see Traffic, Directions and Information, Terms and Conditions. See MyLincoln Touch™ (page 303).

CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65

WARNING



Some constituents of engine exhaust, certain vehicle components, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

PERCHLORATE

Certain components in your vehicle such as airbag modules, safety belt pretensioners and remote control batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal. For more information visit:

Web Address
www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate

LINCOLN AUTOMOTIVE FINANCIAL SERVICES

Lincoln Automotive Financial Services offers a full range of financing and lease plans to help you acquire your vehicle. If you have financed or leased your vehicle through Lincoln Automotive Financial Services, thank you for your business.

For your convenience we offer a number of ways to contact us, as well as help manage your account.

Phone: 1-888-498-8801

For more information regarding Lincoln Automotive Financial Services, as well as access Account Manager, please go to www.LincolnAFS.com.

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

Your vehicle has been built to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Introduction

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. Damage caused to your vehicle as a result of the failure of non-Ford parts may not be covered by the Ford Warranty. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

SPECIAL NOTICES

New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, refer to the Warranty Manual that is provided to you along with your Owner's Manual.

Special Instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.

WARNINGS



Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury. See **Supplementary**

Restraints System



Front seat mounted rear-facing child or infant seats should **NEVER** be placed in front of an active passenger airbag.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.



Information Provided by:

12 **DEALER**
PROCESS

Introduction

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury.

We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

This Owner's Manual is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian Markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for Export. **Refer to this Owner's Manual for all other required information and warnings.**

EXPORT UNIQUE OPTIONS

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Manual. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle.



Information Provided by:


DEALER
E - P - R - E - S - S

Child Safety


GENERAL INFORMATION

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children.

WARNINGS


 Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

WARNINGS

 All children are shaped differently. The recommendations for safety restraints are based on probable child height, age and weight thresholds from National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and other safety organizations, or are the minimum requirements of law. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and consult your pediatrician to make sure your child seat is appropriate for your child, and is compatible with and properly installed in your vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST, contact the NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or go to <http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov>. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST or for further information, contact your provincial ministry

WARNINGS

of transportation, locate your local St. John Ambulance office by searching for St. John Ambulance on the internet, or Transport Canada at 1-800-333-0371 (<http://www.tc.gc.ca>). Failure to properly restrain children in safety seats made especially for their height, age, and weight may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

 Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. On hot days, the temperature in the trunk or vehicle interior can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat-related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

Child Safety

Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children

Child	Child size, height, weight, or age	Recommended restraint type
Infants or toddlers	Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).	Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Small children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 ft. 9 in. (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age four and less than age 12, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer).	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Larger children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (1.45 m) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer).	Use a vehicle safety belt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seat back upright.

Child Safety

- You are required by law to properly use safety seats for infants and toddlers in the United States and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 pounds (36 kilograms). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements about the safety of children in your vehicle.
- When possible, always properly restrain children 12 years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position. See **Front Passenger Sensing System** (page 38).

INSTALLING CHILD SEATS

Child Seats



E142594

Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat) for infants, toddlers, or children weighing 40 pounds (18 kilograms) or less (generally age four or younger).

Using Lap and Shoulder Belts

WARNINGS



Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.

WARNINGS



Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in the rear seat whenever possible.



Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

When installing a child safety seat with combination lap and shoulder belts:

- Use the correct safety belt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child seat and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
PROCESS

Child Safety

- Place the vehicle seat upon which the child seat will be installed in the upright position.
- Put the safety belt in the automatic locking mode. See Step 5. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

Perform the following steps when installing the child seat with combination lap and shoulder belts:

Note: Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.



E142528

1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.



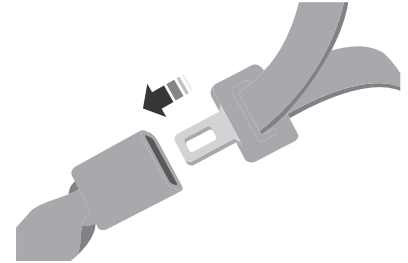
E142529

2. After positioning the child safety seat in the proper seating position, pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together behind the belt tongue.



E142530

3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.



E142531

4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
EXPRESS

Child Safety



E142875

5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out.

Note: The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger and rear seats.

6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.
7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.



E142533

8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, for example, by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the extra weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to your vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean toward the buckle will provide extra help to remove remaining slack from the belt.
9. Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped).



E142534


10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) of movement for proper installation.


Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a Certified Passenger Seat Technician.

Child Safety

Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)

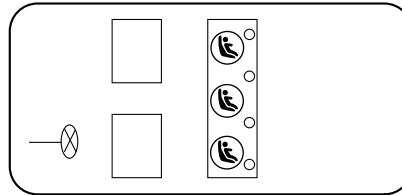
WARNINGS

 Never attach two child safety seats to the same anchor. In a collision, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety seat attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

 Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies or LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

The LATCH system is composed of three vehicle anchor points: two lower anchors located where seat back and seat cushion meet (called the seat bight) and one top tether anchor located behind that seating position.

LATCH compatible child safety seats have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use safety belts to attach the child seat, however the safety belt can still be used to attach the child seat. For forward-facing child seats, the top tether strap must also be attached to the proper top tether anchor, if a top tether strap has been provided with your child seat.



E173197

Your vehicle has LATCH lower anchors for child seat installation at the seating positions marked with the child seat symbol.



E144054

The LATCH anchors are located at the rear section of the rear seat between the cushion and seatback below the symbols as shown. Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to properly install a child seat with LATCH attachments. Follow the instructions on attaching child safety seats with tether straps.

Attach LATCH lower attachments of the child seat only to the anchors shown.

Child Safety

Child Seat Positioning for LATCH Lower Anchors

All the LATCH lower anchors are equally spaced, 11 inches (28 centimeters) apart, allowing for the following child seat positioning:

- If a single child seat is installed using the LATCH lower anchors, it can be installed at any rear seating position.
- If two child safety seats are installed using the LATCH lower anchors, they must be placed in the outboard seating positions only.
- If three child safety seats are installed, you can install two using the LATCH lower anchors by placing them in each outboard seating position and the third in the center using the lap and shoulder belt, OR you can use the LATCH lower anchors for the center child safety seat and the lap and shoulder belts for the other two child safety seats in the outboard positions. Use the tether anchors if applicable.

Combining Safety Belt and LATCH Lower Anchors for Attaching Child Safety Seats

When used in combination, either the safety belt or the LATCH lower anchors may be attached first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if included with the child seat.

Using Tether Straps

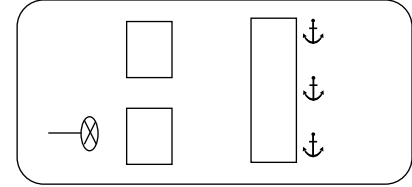


Many forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child safety seat and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats.

Contact the manufacturer of your child seat for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your safety seat does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in your vehicle.

Once the child safety seat has been installed using either the safety belt, the lower anchors of the LATCH system, or both, you can attach the top tether strap.

The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):



E142537

Perform the following steps to install a child safety seat with tether anchors:

Note: If you install a child seat with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child seat off your vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child seat. Keeping the child seat just touching your vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.

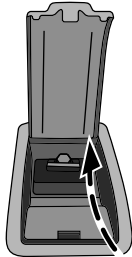
1. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the seat.

Child Safety



E173198

2. Locate the correct anchor for the selected seating position, then open the tether anchor cover.



E173199

3. Open the tether anchor cover.



E173200

4. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.
5. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

If your child restraint system is equipped with a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, Ford also recommends its use.

BOOSTER SEATS

WARNING

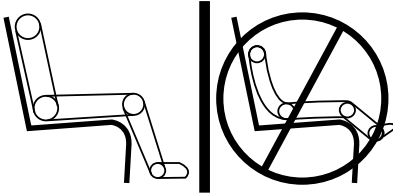


Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

Use a belt-positioning booster seat for children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12), and between 40 pounds (18 kilograms) and 80 pounds (36 kilograms) and upward to 100 pounds (45 kilograms) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 pounds (36 kilograms).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:

Child Safety



E142595

- Can the child sit all the way back against their vehicle seat back with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?
- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Always use booster seats in conjunction with your vehicle lap and shoulder belt.

Types of Booster Seats



E68924

- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat back or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat back or head restraint and lap and shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.



E70710

- High back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The

Child Safety

following drawings compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that

could slip off the shoulder. The drawings also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.



E142596



E142597



Information Provided by:


DEALER
EXPERIENCE

Child Safety



If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat upon which it is being used, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

CHILD SEAT POSITIONING





WARNINGS

 Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back. When possible, all children age 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

WARNINGS

-  Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by your vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.
-  Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while your vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a crash, which may result in serious injury or death.

WARNINGS

-  Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a crash.
-  Always restrain an unoccupied child seat or booster seat. These objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.
-  Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.
-  To avoid risk of injury, do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle.

Child Safety

Recommendations for attaching child safety restraints for children

Restraint Type	Combined weight of child and child seat	Use any attachment method as indicated below by X				
		LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	LATCH (lower anchors only)	Safety belt and top tether anchor	Safety belt and LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	Safety belt only
Rear facing child seat	Up to 65 lb (29 kg)		X			X
Rear facing child seat	Over 65 lb (29 kg)					X
Forward facing child seat	Up to 65 lb (29 kg)	X		X	X	
Forward facing child seat	Over 65 lb (29 kg)			X	X	

Note: *The child seat must rest tightly against the vehicle seat upon which it is installed. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See **Seats** (page 109).*

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.

Child Safety



E112197

The childproof locks are located on the rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock and counterclockwise to unlock.








Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P R O C E S S




Safety Belts

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

-  Always drive and ride with your seat back upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.
-  To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit where they can be properly restrained.
-  Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while your vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a crash.
-  All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your safety belt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.
-  It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

WARNINGS

-  In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a safety belt.
-  Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the safety belt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.
-  When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.
-  Safety belts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.
-  Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear safety belts for optimum protection in an accident.

All seating positions in your vehicle have lap and shoulder safety belts. All occupants of the vehicle should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

The safety belt system consists of:

- lap and shoulder safety belts.
- shoulder safety belt with automatic locking mode, (except driver safety belt).
- height adjuster at the front outboard seating positions.
- safety belt pretensioner at the front outboard seating positions.
- belt tension sensor at the front outboard passenger seating position.



- Safety belt warning light and chime.



- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

Safety Belts

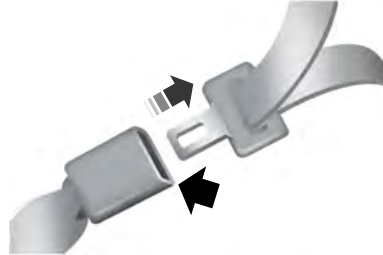
The safety belt pretensioners at the front seating positions are designed to tighten the safety belts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the safety belt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags. The pretensioners may also activate when a side curtain airbag is deployed.

FASTENING THE SAFETY BELTS

The front outboard and rear safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts.



1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.



2. To unfasten, press the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.



When in use, the rear safety belts should be placed in the belt guides on the outboard seatbacks.

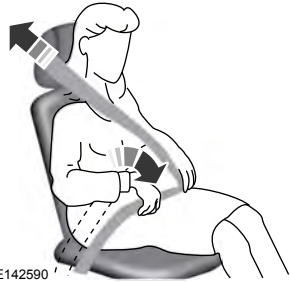
Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy

WARNING



Always ride and drive with your seatback upright and the safety belt properly fastened. The lap portion of the safety belt should fit snug and be positioned low across the hips. The shoulder portion of the safety belt should be positioned across the chest. Pregnant women should also follow this practice. See the following figure.

Safety Belts



Pregnant women should always wear their safety belt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

Safety Belt Locking Modes

WARNINGS



After any vehicle crash, the safety belt system at all passenger seating positions must be checked by an authorized dealer to verify that the automatic locking retractor feature for child seats is still functioning properly. In addition, all safety belts should be checked for proper function.

WARNINGS



The belt and retractor assembly must be replaced if the safety belt assembly automatic locking retractor feature or any other safety belt function is not operating properly when checked by an authorized dealer. Failure to replace the belt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in crashes.

All safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts. The driver safety belt has the first type of locking mode, and the front outboard passenger and rear seat safety belts have both types of locking modes described as follows:

Vehicle Sensitive Mode

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of about 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination safety belts will lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

In addition, the retractor is designed to lock if the webbing is pulled out too quickly. If this occurs, let the belt retract slightly and pull webbing out again in a slow and controlled manner.

Automatic Locking Mode

In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver safety belt.

When to Use the Automatic Locking Mode

This mode should be used any time a child safety seat, except a booster, is installed in passenger front or rear seating positions. Children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. See **Child Safety** (page 14).

Safety Belts

How to Use the Automatic Locking Mode



E142591

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is pulled out.

Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the automatic locking mode.

How to Disengage the Automatic Locking Mode

Unbuckle the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and turn on the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

Safety Belt Extension Assembly

WARNING



Do not use extensions to change the fit of the shoulder belt across the torso.

If the safety belt is too short when fully extended, you can obtain a safety belt extension assembly from an authorized dealer.

Use only extensions manufactured by the same supplier as the safety belt. Manufacturer identification is on a label located either at the end of the webbing or on the retractor behind the trim. Also, use the safety belt extension only if the safety belt is too short for you when fully extended.

SAFETY BELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

WARNING



Position the safety belt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.



E146191

To adjust the shoulder belt height:

1. Press the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
PROCESS

Safety Belts

2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

SAFETY BELT WARNING LAMP AND INDICATOR CHIME



This lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound if the driver's safety belt has not been fastened when the vehicle's ignition is turned on.

Conditions of operation

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light illuminates 1-2 minutes and the warning chime sounds 4-8 seconds.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding...	The safety belt warning light and warning chime turn off.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light and indicator chime remain off.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
SERVICE CENTER

Safety Belts

SAFETY BELT MINDER

Belt-Minder™

This feature supplements the safety belt warning function by providing additional reminders that intermittently sound a tone and illuminate the safety belt warning light when you are in the driver seat or you have a front seat passenger and a safety belt is

unbuckled.

The system uses information from the front passenger sensing system to determine if a front seat passenger is present and therefore potentially in need of a warning. To avoid activating the Belt-Minder feature for objects you place in the front passenger seat, only the front seat passengers receive warnings as determined by the front passenger sensing system.

If the Belt-Minder warnings expire (warnings for about five minutes) for one passenger (driver or front passenger), the other passenger can still cause the Belt-Minder feature to turn on.

If...	Then...
You and the front seat passenger buckle your safety belts before you switch the ignition on or less than 1-2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature will not activate.
You or the front seat passenger do not buckle your safety belts before your vehicle reaches at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and 1-2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature activates, the safety belt warning light illuminates and a warning tone sounds for 6 seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for about 5 minutes or until you and the front seat passenger buckle your safety belts.
The safety belt for the driver or front passenger is unbuckled for about 1 minute while the vehicle is traveling at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and more than 1-2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature activates, the safety belt warning light illuminates and a warning tone sounds for 6 seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for about 5 minutes or until you and the front seat passenger buckle your safety belts.

Safety Belts

Deactivating and Activating the Belt-Minder Feature

WARNING



While the system allows you to deactivate it, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle.

Note: *The driver and front passenger warnings switch on and off independently. When you perform this procedure for one seating position, do not buckle the other position as this will terminate the process.*

Read Steps 1 - 4 thoroughly before proceeding with the programming procedure. Before following the procedure, make sure that:

- The parking brake is set.
- The transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).
- The ignition is off.
- The driver and front passenger safety belts are unbuckled.

1. Switch the ignition on. Do not start the vehicle.
2. Wait until the safety belt warning light turns off (about one minute). After Step 2, wait an additional 5 seconds before proceeding with Step 3. Once you start Step 3, you must complete the procedure within 30 seconds.
3. For the seating position you are switching off, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt three times at a moderate speed, ending in the unbuckled state. After Step 3, the safety belt warning light turns on.
4. While the safety belt warning light is on, buckle and then unbuckle the safety belt. After Step 4, the safety belt warning light flashes for confirmation.
 - This will switch the feature off for that seating position if it is currently on.
 - This will switch the feature on for that seating position if it is currently off.

CHILD RESTRAINT AND SAFETY BELT MAINTENANCE

Inspect the vehicle safety belts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child seat safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front safety belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seat back (if equipped), rear inflatable safety belts (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a collision. Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint.

Ford Motor Company recommends that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a collision be replaced. However, if the collision was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a collision should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Safety Belts

Properly care for safety belts. See **Vehicle Care** (page 257).



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - PROCESS

Personal Safety System™

The Personal Safety System provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system is able to analyze different occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

The Vehicle Personal Safety System consists of:

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
- Front seat outboard safety belts with pretensioners, energy management retractors and safety belt usage sensors.
- Driver seat position sensor.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Passenger airbag off and on indicator lamp.
- Front crash severity sensors.
- Restraints control module with impact and safing sensors.

- Restraint system warning light and backup tone.
- The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensors, safety belt pretensioners, front safety belt usage sensors, driver seat position sensor, front passenger sensing system and indicator lights.


How Does the Personal Safety System Work?


The Personal Safety System can adapt the deployment strategy of the safety devices according to crash severity and occupant conditions. A collection of crash and occupant sensors provides information to the restraints control module. During a crash, the restraints control module may deploy the safety belt pretensioners, one or both stages of the dual-stage airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions.


Supplementary Restraints System


PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION


WARNINGS

 Airbags do not inflate slowly or gently, and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is the greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.


 All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your safety belt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.


 Always transport children 12 years old and under in the back seat and always properly use appropriate child restraints. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.


 Never place your arm over the airbag module as a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.

 Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.

WARNINGS

 Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

 Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. To reduce the risk of injury, do not touch them after inflation.

 If the airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again and must be replaced immediately. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The airbags are a supplemental restraint system and are designed to work with the safety belts to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags do not inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

Note: *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (for example, baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, contact with a deploying airbag may also cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

Supplementary Restraints System

DRIVER AND PASSENGER AIRBAGS

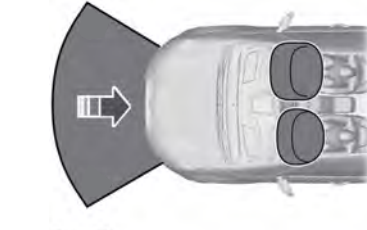
WARNINGS



Never place your arm or any objects over an airbag module. Placing your arm over a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries. Objects placed on or over the airbag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the airbag into your face and torso causing serious injury.



Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.



E151127

The driver and front passenger airbags will deploy during significant frontal and near frontal crashes.

The driver and passenger front airbag system consists of:

- Driver and passenger airbag modules.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 43).



Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment

WARNING



National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 inches (25 centimeters) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly (one or two degrees) from the upright position.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase



Information Provided by:


DEALER
E - P - R - C - E - S

Supplementary Restraints System

the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

Children and Airbags

WARNING

 Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.





E142846


Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a crash.

FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

WARNINGS

 Even with Advanced Restraints Systems, children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

 Sitting improperly out of position or with the seat back reclined too far can take off weight from the seat cushion and affect the decision of the front passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

 Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system which could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

This system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger's seat and safety belt to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the front passenger's frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.

PASSENGER
AIRBAG OFF ☐ ON

PASS AIRBAG
OFF ☐ ON

E173214

The front passenger sensing system uses a passenger airbag status indicator that will illuminate indicating that the front passenger frontal airbag is either ON (enabled) or OFF (disabled).

The indicator lamp is located in the center stack of the instrument panel.

Note: *The passenger airbag status indicator OFF and ON indicator lamps will illuminate for a short period of time when the ignition is first turned on to confirm it is functional.*

Supplementary Restraints System

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag when the front passenger seat is unoccupied, or a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat is detected. Even with this technology, parents are **strongly** encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat. The sensor also turns off the passenger front airbag and seat-mounted side airbag when the passenger seat is empty.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator will illuminate the OFF lamp and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.
- If the child restraint has been installed and the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the ON lamp, then turn the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag (may inflate), the passenger airbag status indicator will illuminate the ON lamp and remain illuminated.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger's seat, but the airbag off indicator lamp is lit, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seat back in the full upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and enable the passenger's frontal airbag.
- If the indicator OFF lamp remains lit even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

Supplementary Restraints System

Occupant	Passenger airbag status indicator	Passenger airbag
Empty	OFF: Lit	Disabled
	ON: Unlit	
Child	OFF: Lit	Disabled
	ON: Unlit	
Adult	OFF: Unlit	Enabled
	ON: Lit	

Note: When the passenger airbag status indicator OFF light is illuminated, the passenger (seat mounted) side airbag may be disabled to avoid the risk of airbag deployment injuries.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase

the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.



Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 43).

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center. See **Getting the Services You Need** (page 212).

SIDE AIRBAGS

WARNINGS



Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the seatbacks (of the front seats), or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.







Information Provided by:

DEALER
PROCESS

Supplementary Restraints System

WARNINGS

-  Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.
-  Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.
-  Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag, its fuses or the seat cover on a seat containing an airbag as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
-  If the side airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again. The side airbag system (including the seat) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The side airbags are located on the outboard side of the seatbacks of the front seats. In certain sideways crashes, the airbag on the side affected by the crash will be inflated. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact crashes.



E152533

The system consists of the following:

- A label or embossed side panel indicating that side airbags are fitted to your vehicle.
- Side airbags located inside the driver and front passenger seatbacks.
- Front passenger sensing system.





Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 43).

Note: The passenger sensing system will deactivate the passenger seat-mounted side airbag if it detects an empty passenger seat.

The design and development of the side airbag system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags.


SAFETY CANOPY™


WARNINGS


-  Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.
-  Do not lean your head on the door. The curtain airbag could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.


Supplementary Restraints System

WARNINGS

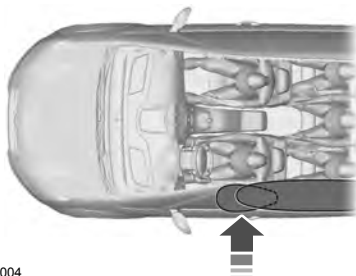
 Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the curtain airbags, its fuses, the A, B, or C pillar trim, or the headliner on a vehicle containing curtain airbags as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

 All occupants of your vehicle including the driver should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag supplemental restraint system and curtain airbag is provided. Failure to properly wear your safety belt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

 To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the curtain airbag.

 If the curtain airbags have deployed, the curtain airbags will not function again. The curtain airbags (including the A, B and C pillar trim and headliner) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer. If the curtain airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The Safety Canopy will deploy during significant side crashes or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. The Safety Canopy is mounted to the roof side-rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above each row of seats. In certain sideways crashes or rollover events, the Safety Canopy will be activated, regardless of which seats are occupied. The Safety Canopy is designed to inflate between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact crashes and rollover events.



E75004

The system consists of the following:

- Safety canopy curtain airbags located above the trim panels over the front and rear side windows identified by a label or wording on the headliner or roof-pillar trim.
- A flexible headliner which opens above the side doors to allow air curtain deployment



- The crash sensors and monitoring system have a readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 43).

Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in the rear seats. The Safety Canopy will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

Supplementary Restraints System

The design and development of the Safety Canopy included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags (including the Safety Canopy).

CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR

WARNING



Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of the vehicle (including frame, bumper, front end body structure and tow hooks) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of the vehicle.

Your vehicle has a collection of crash and occupant sensors which provide information to the restraints control module. The restraints control module deploys (activates) the front safety belt pretensioners, driver airbag, passenger airbag, seat mounted side airbags and the Safety Canopy. Based on the type of crash (frontal impact or side impact), the restraints control module will deploy the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash and occupant sensors. The readiness of the safety system is indicated by a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster or by a backup tone if the warning light is not working. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:



The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after the ignition is turned on.

- The readiness light will either flash or stay lit.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem, the light or both are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a crash.

The safety belt pretensioners and the front airbag supplemental restraint system are designed to activate when the vehicle sustains frontal deceleration sufficient to cause the restraints control module to deploy a safety device.

The fact that the safety belt pretensioners or front airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a crash does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- The design of the front airbags is to activate only in frontal and near-frontal crashes (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts) unless the crash causes sufficient frontal deceleration.
- The design of the safety belt pretensioners is to activate in frontal, near-frontal and side crashes and in rollovers.

Supplementary Restraints System

- The design of the side airbags is to inflate in certain side impact crashes. Side airbags may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation.
- The design of the Safety Canopy is to inflate in certain side impact crashes or rollover events. The Safety Canopy may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation, or a certain likelihood of rollover.

AIRBAG DISPOSAL

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags must be disposed of by qualified personnel.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P R O C E S S

Keys and Remote Controls

GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term **IC** before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.*

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 33 feet (10 meters). Vehicles with the remote start feature will have a greater range. One of the following could cause a decrease in operating range:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around the vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle

Other short-distance radio transmitters, such as amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems may operate on the same frequency as your remote control. If other transmitters are operating on those frequencies, you may not be able to use your remote control. Using your remote control near some types of electronic equipment, such as USB devices, computers or cell phones can interfere with remote operation. Operating your remote control near metal or metallic-finished purses, bags or clothing can interfere with remote operation. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: *Make sure to lock your vehicle before leaving it unattended.*

Note: *If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.*

Intelligent Access

The system uses a radio frequency signal to communicate with your vehicle and authorize your vehicle to unlock when one of the following conditions are met:

- You touch the inside of the front exterior door handle.
- You press the luggage compartment button.
- You press a button on the transmitter.

If excessive radio frequency interference is present in the area or if the transmitter battery is low, you may need to mechanically unlock your door. You can use the mechanical key blade in your intelligent access key to open the driver door in this situation. See **Remote Control** (page 46).

Keys and Remote Controls

REMOTE CONTROL

Intelligent Access Key



E173598

Your intelligent access key operates the power locks and the remote start system. The key must be in your vehicle to activate the push-button start system.

Removable Key Blade

The intelligent access key also contains a removable mechanical key blade that you can use to unlock the driver door.



E173599

Slide the release on the back of the remote control to release the mechanical key blade, and then pull the blade out.



E173600

Note: Your vehicle's backup keys came with a security tag that provides important vehicle key cut information. Keep the tag in a safe place for future reference.

Replacing the Battery

Note: Refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

Note: Replacing the battery will not delete the transmitter from the vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.

Intelligent Access Transmitter

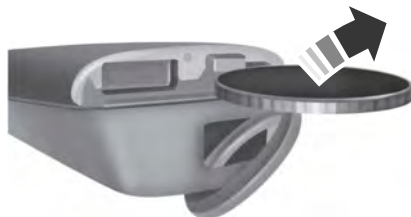
The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.



E173599

1. Remove the mechanical key blade from the transmitter.

Keys and Remote Controls



E173601

2. Insert a coin into the slot and twist to separate the housing.



E173602

3. Remove the old battery.
4. Install a new batteries with the + facing downward. Press the battery down to make sure that it is fully in the housing.

5. Snap the battery cover back onto the transmitter and install the mechanical key blade.

Car Finder



Press the button twice within three seconds. The horn will sound and the turn signals will flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

Sounding a Panic Alarm

Note: *The panic alarm will only operate when the ignition is off.*



Press the button to activate the alarm. Press the button again or switch the ignition on to deactivate.

Remote Start

WARNING



To avoid exhaust fumes, do not use remote start if your vehicle is parked indoors or areas that are not well ventilated.

Note: *Do not use remote start if your vehicle is low on fuel.*



The remote start button is on the transmitter.

This feature allows you to start your vehicle from outside the vehicle. The transmitter has an extended operating range.

Vehicles with automatic climate control can be configured to operate when the vehicle is remote started. See **Remote Start** (page 108). A manual climate control system will run at the setting it was set to when you switched the vehicle off.

Many states and provinces have restrictions for the use of remote start. Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding remote start systems.

The remote start system will not work if:

- the ignition is on
- the alarm system is triggered
- you disable the feature
- the hood is open
- the transmission is not in **P**
- the vehicle battery voltage is too low
- the service engine soon light is on.



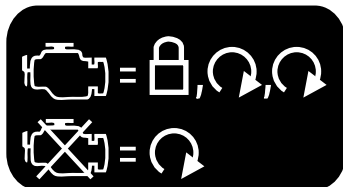
Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P - R - C - E - S

Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Starting the Vehicle

Note: You must press each button within three seconds of each other. Your vehicle will not remote start if you do not follow this sequence.



E138626

The tag with your transmitter details the starting procedure.

To remote start your vehicle:

1. Press the lock button to lock all the doors.
2. Press the remote start button twice. The exterior lamps will flash twice.

The horn will sound if the system fails to start, unless quiet start is on. Quiet start will run the blower fan at a slower speed to reduce noise. It can be switched on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 88).

Note: If the vehicle has been remote started with an integrated keyhead transmitter, you must switch the ignition on before driving your vehicle. With an intelligent access transmitter, you must press the **START/STOP** button on the instrument panel once while applying the brake pedal before driving your vehicle.

The power windows will not work during the remote start and the radio will not turn on automatically.

The parking lamps will remain on and the vehicle will run for 5, 10, or 15 minutes, depending on the setting.

Extending the Vehicle Run Time

Repeat Steps 1 and 2 with the vehicle still running to extend the run time for another remote start duration. If you programmed the duration to last 10 minutes, the second 10 minutes will begin after what is left of the first activation time. For example, if the vehicle had been running from the first remote start for five minutes, the vehicle will continue to run now for a total of 15 minutes. You can extend the remote start up to a maximum of 35 minutes.

Wait at least five seconds before remote starting after a vehicle shutdown.

Turning the Vehicle Off After Remote Starting



Press the button once. The parking lamps will turn off.

You may have to be closer to the vehicle than when starting due to ground reflection and the added noise of the running vehicle.

You can disable or enable the remote start system through the information display. See **General Information** (page 88).

Memory Feature

You can recall the positions of the memory seat, outside mirrors, steering column and power pedal positions (if equipped) with your intelligent access key if it is linked to a pre-set position. See **Memory Function** (page 114).

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

Replacement keys or remote controls can be purchased from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 63).

Keys and Remote Controls

To re-program the passive anti-theft system
see an authorized dealer.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P R O C E S S

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits. All but one of the keys programmed to the vehicle can be activated with these restricted modes.

Any keys that have not been programmed are referred to as administrator keys or admin keys. These can be used to:

- Create a MyKey.
- Program configurable MyKey settings.
- Clear all MyKey features.

When you have programmed a MyKey, you can access the following information using the information display:

- How many admin keys and MyKeys are programmed to your vehicle.
- The total distance your vehicle has traveled using a MyKey.

Note: All MyKeys are programmed to the same settings. You cannot program them individually.

Note: For vehicles with push-button start, when both a MyKey and an admin remote transmitter are present, the admin remote transmitter will be recognized by the vehicle while switching the ignition on to start the vehicle.

Non-configurable Settings

The following settings cannot be changed by an admin key user:

- Seat belt reminder or Belt Minder. You cannot disable this feature. The audio system will mute when the front seat passengers' safety belts are not fastened.
- Early low fuel. The low-fuel warning activates earlier, giving the MyKey user more time to refuel.
- Driver assist features, if equipped on your vehicle, are forced on: parking aid, blind spot information system (BLIS) with cross traffic alert, lane departure warning and forward collision warning system or active city-stop.

Configurable Settings

With an admin key, you can configure certain MyKey settings when you first create a MyKey and before you recycle the key or restart the vehicle. You can also change the settings afterward with an admin key.

- A vehicle speed limit can be set. Warnings will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed by fully depressing the accelerator pedal or by setting cruise control.

WARNING



Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

- Various vehicle speed minders can be set. Once you select a speed, it will be shown in the display, followed by an audible tone when the preselected vehicle speed is exceeded.
- Audio system maximum volume of 45%. A message will be shown in the display when you attempt to exceed the limited volume. Also, the speed-sensitive or compensated automatic volume control will be disabled.
- Always on setting. When this is selected, you will not be able to turn off Advance Trac or traction control (if your vehicle is equipped with this feature).

CREATING A MYKEY

Use the information display to create a MyKey:

1. Insert the key you want to program into the ignition. If your vehicle is equipped with a push-button start, place the intelligent access key fob into the backup slot. The location of your backup slot is in another chapter. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 126).

2. Switch the ignition on.
3. Access the main menu on the information display controls, and select **Settings** then **MyKey** by pressing **OK** or the **>** button.
4. Press **OK** or the **>** button to select **Create MyKey**.
5. When prompted, hold the **OK** button until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The key will be restricted at the next start.

MyKey is successfully created. Make sure you label it so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

You can also program configurable settings for the key(s). See **Programming/Changing Configurable Settings**.

Programming/Changing Configurable Settings

Use the information display to access your configurable MyKey settings.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key or fob.

2. Access the main menu on the information display controls, and select **Settings**, then **MyKey** by pressing **OK** or **>** button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to get to a feature.
4. Press **OK** or **>** to make a selection.

Note: You can clear or change your MyKey settings at any time during the same key cycle as you created the MyKey. Once you have switched the vehicle off, however, you will need an admin key to change or clear your MyKey settings.

CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

You can clear or change your MyKey settings using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 88).

Switch the ignition on using an admin key or fob.

To clear all MyKeys of all MyKey settings, press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the OK button.
MyKey	Press the OK button.
Clear MyKey	Press and hold the OK button until the following message displays.
All MyKeys Cleared	

Note: When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.



CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information on programmed MyKey(s) using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 88).

To find information on a programmed MyKey(s), press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:

Message	Description
Settings	Press the OK button.
MyKey	Press the OK button.
Select one of the following:	
MyKey Dist.	Tracks the distance when drivers use a MyKey. The only way to delete the accumulated distance is by using an admin key to clear your MyKey. If the distance does not accumulate as expected, then the intended user is not using the MyKey, or an admin key user recently cleared and then recreated a MyKey.
{0} MyKeys	Indicates the number of MyKeys programed to your vehicle. Use this feature to detect how many MyKeys you have for your vehicle and determine when a MyKey has been deleted.
{0} Admin Keys	Indicates how many admin keys are programed to your vehicle. Use this feature to determine how many unrestricted keys you have for your vehicle, and detect if an additional MyKey has been programed.

USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is not compatible with non

Ford-approved, aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, see an authorized dealer for a Ford-approved remote start system.

MYKEY TROUBLESHOOTING

Condition	Potential Causes
I cannot create a MyKey.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The key or fob used to start the vehicle does not have admin privileges. ▪ The key or fob used to start the vehicle is the only admin key (there always has to be at least one admin key). ▪ Vehicles with push-button start: The intelligent access key fob is not positioned correctly next to the steering column. See Keyless Starting (page 126). ▪ SecuriLock passive anti-theft system is disabled or in unlimited mode. ▪ The vehicle has been started using a remote start system that is not programmed with admin privileges. See Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems (page 54).
I cannot program the configurable settings.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The key or fob used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges. ▪ No MyKeys are created. See Creating a MyKey (page 51). ▪ The vehicle has been started using a remote start system that is not programmed with admin privileges. See Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems (page 54).
I cannot clear the MyKeys.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The key or fob used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges. ▪ No MyKeys are created. See Creating a MyKey (page 51). ▪ The vehicle has been started using a remote start system that is not programmed with admin privileges. See Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems (page 54).
I lost the only admin key.	Purchase a new key from your authorized dealer.
I lost a key	Program a spare key. See Passive Anti-Theft System (page 63).

MyKey™

Condition	Potential Causes
I accidentally programmed all keys as MyKeys.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The vehicle has a remote start system that is recognized as an admin key. Clear all MyKeys by using the remote start. See Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems (page 54). • The vehicle's system does not recognize any programmed MyKeys. See Creating a MyKey (page 51).
MyKey total includes one additional key.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An unknown key or fob has been created as a MyKey. • The vehicle has a remote start system. See Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems (page 54).
Admin key total includes one additional key.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An unknown key or fob has been programmed to the vehicle as an admin key. • The vehicle has a remote start system. See Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems (page 54).
MyKey distances do not accumulate.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The MyKey user is not using the MyKey. • An admin key holder cleared the MyKeys and created new MyKeys. • The key system has been reset.
No MyKey functions with the Intelligent Access key.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An admin fob is present at vehicle start. • No MyKeys are created. See Creating a MyKey (page 51).

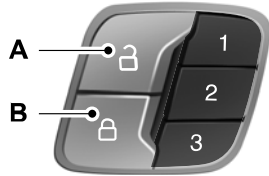
Locks

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

You can use the power door lock control or the remote control to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is on the driver and front passenger door panels.



E138628

- A Unlock
- B Lock

Remote Control

You can use the remote control anytime your vehicle is not running.

Unlocking the Doors (Two-Stage Unlock)



Press the button to unlock the driver door.

Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. The turn signals will flash.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for four seconds to disable or enable two-stage unlocking. Disabling two-stage unlocking allows all vehicle doors to unlock with one press of the button. The turn signals will flash twice to indicate the unlocking mode was changed. The unlocking mode will be applied to the remote control, keyless entry keypad and intelligent access.

Intelligent access at the driver door will unlock all doors when two-stage unlocking is disabled.

Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all the doors. The turn signals will illuminate.

Press the button again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. The doors will lock again, the horn will sound and the turn signals will illuminate if all the doors and the luggage compartment are closed.

Note: *If any door or the luggage compartment is open, or if the hood is open on vehicles with an anti-theft alarm or remote start, the horn sounds twice and the lamps will not flash.*

Opening the Luggage Compartment



Press twice within three seconds to open the luggage compartment.

Make sure to close and latch the luggage compartment before driving your vehicle. An unlatched luggage compartment may cause objects to fall out or block your view.

Activating Intelligent Access

You must have the intelligent access key within 3 feet (1 meter) of your vehicle.

At the Front Doors

Pull an exterior door handle to unlock and open the door.

Locks



E173603

Press and hold the door handle lock sensor to lock your vehicle. To avoid unlocking the door inadvertently, make sure to only touch the lock sensor and not other areas of the door handle.

Note: Keep the door handle surface clean to avoid issues with operation.

At the Luggage Compartment

Press the exterior release button hidden near the license plate.

Smart Unlocks

This feature helps to prevent you from unintentionally locking your intelligent access key inside your vehicle's passenger compartment or rear cargo area.

When you lock your vehicle using the driver or passenger power door lock control (with the door open, vehicle park (P) and ignition off), after you close the door your vehicle will search for an intelligent access key in the passenger compartment. If an intelligent access key is found inside your vehicle, all of the doors will immediately unlock and the horn will sound, indicating that the intelligent access key is inside.

In order to override the smart unlock feature and intentionally lock the intelligent access key inside your vehicle, you can lock your vehicle after all doors are closed by using the keyless entry keypad, pressing the lock button on another intelligent access key or touching the locking area on the handle with another intelligent access key in your hand. See **Keyless Entry** (page 59).

When you open one of the front doors and lock your vehicle using the power door lock control, all doors will lock then unlock if:

- The ignition is on.
- The ignition is off and the transmission is not in park (P).

Autolock Feature (If Enabled)

The autolock feature will lock all the doors when:

- All doors are closed.
- The ignition is on.
- You shift into any gear putting your vehicle in motion.
- Your vehicle attains a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).

The autolock feature repeats when:

- You open then close any door while the ignition is on and your vehicle speed is 9 mph (15 km/h) or lower.
- Your vehicle then attains a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).

Autounlock Feature (If Enabled)

The autounlock unlocks all the doors when:

- The ignition is on, all the doors are closed, and your vehicle has been in motion at a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).
- Your vehicle has then come to a stop and you switch the ignition off or to accessory.
- You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off or to accessory.

Locks

Note: The doors will not autounlock if you electronically lock your vehicle after you switch the ignition off and before you open the driver door.

Enabling or Disabling

Note: You can enable or disable the autolock and autounlock features independently of each other.

You can enable or disable these features in the information display or your authorized dealer can do it for you. See **General Information** (page 88).

Illuminated Entry

The interior lamps and select exterior lamps will illuminate when you unlock the doors with the remote entry system.

The illuminated entry system will turn off the lights if:

- The ignition is on.
- You press the remote control lock button.
- After 25 seconds of illumination.

The lights will not turn off if:

- You turn them on with the lamp control.
- Any door is open.

Illuminated Exit

The interior dome lamps, parking lamps and puddle lamps illuminate when all doors are closed and the ignition is turned off.

The lights will turn off if all the doors remain closed and:

- 25 seconds elapse.
- You press the START/STOP button.

Battery Saver

If you leave the courtesy lamps, dome lamps or headlamps on, the battery saver will shut them off 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Accessory Mode Battery Saver for Intelligent Access Keys

If you leave your vehicle in the run ignition state, it will shut off once it detects a certain amount of battery drain or after 45 minutes.

Luggage Compartment Release

From Inside Your Vehicle

Press the button located on the instrument panel.

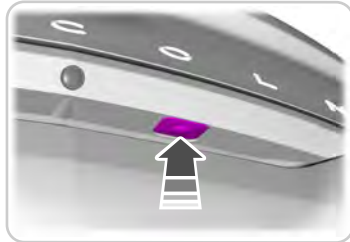
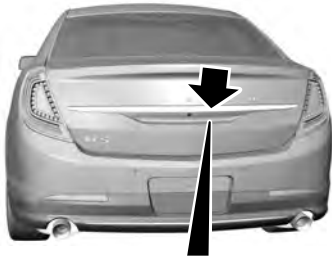


E173604

From Outside Your Vehicle

- Unlock the trunk with the remote control or power door lock control. The trunk unlocks when you press the release button if the intelligent access transmitter is within 3 feet (1 meter) of the trunk.
- Press the release button located near the license plate.

Locks



E173605

KEYLESS ENTRY

SECURICODE™ KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD

The keypad is located near the driver window. It is invisible until touched and then it lights up so you can see and touch the appropriate buttons.

Note: If you enter your entry code too fast on the keypad, the unlock function may not work. Re-enter your entry code more slowly.

E138637

1-2

3-4

5-6

7-8

9-0

You can use the keypad to:

- Lock or unlock the doors.
- Open the luggage compartment.
- Recall memory features.
- Enable or disable the autolock and autounlock.
- Arm and disarm the anti-theft alarm.

You can operate the keypad with the factory-set 5-digit entry code. The code is located on the owner's wallet card in the glove box and is available from an authorized dealer. You can also create up to five of your own 5-digit personal entry codes.

Programming a Personal Entry Code

To create your own personal entry code:

1. Enter the factory-set code.
2. Press **1-2** on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Enter your personal 5-digit code. You must enter each number within five seconds of each other.
4. For memory recall feature, enter the sixth digit **1-2** to store driver 1 settings or **3-4** to store driver 2 settings.
5. The doors will lock and then unlock to confirm that programming is complete.

Locks

Note: Pressing 5-6, 7-8, or 9-0 keypad numbers as a sixth digit will not recall a driver memory setting.

Note: The factory-set code cannot be associated with a memory setting.

You may also program a personal entry code through the MyLincoln Touch system. See **Settings** (page 313).

Tips:

- Do not set a code that uses five of the same number.
- Do not use five numbers in sequential order.
- The factory-set code will work even if you have set your own personal code.

Erasing a Personal Code

1. Enter the factory-set 5-digit code.
2. Press and release **1-2** on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Press and hold **1-2** for two seconds. You must do this within five seconds of completing Step 2.

All personal codes are now erased and only the factory-set 5-digit code will work.

Anti-Scan Feature

The keypad will go into an anti-scan mode if you enter the wrong code seven times (35 consecutive button presses). This mode disables the keypad for one minute and the keypad lamp will flash.

The anti-scan feature will turn off after:

- One minute of keypad inactivity.
- Pressing the unlock button on the remote control.
- Switching the ignition on.
- Unlocking your vehicle using intelligent access.

Unlocking and Locking the Doors

To Unlock the Driver Door

Enter the factory-set 5-digit code or your personal code. You must press each number within five seconds of each other. The interior lamps will illuminate.

Note: All doors will unlock if you disable the two-stage unlocking feature. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 56).

To Unlock All Doors

Enter the factory-set code or your personal code, then press **3-4** within five seconds.

To Lock All Doors

Press and hold **7-8** and **9-0** at the same time (with the driver door closed). You do not need to enter the keypad code first.

Displaying the Factory Set Code

Note: You will need to have two programmed intelligent access keys for this procedure.

To display the factory-set code in the information display:



E173591

1. Place the first programmed key in the backup slot beneath the glovebox door. The key ring must be at the top with the buttons facing toward the rear.
2. Press the **START/STOP** button once and wait a few seconds.

Locks

3. Press the **START/STOP** button again and remove the key.
4. Insert the second programmed key into the backup slot, then press the **START/STOP** button.

The factory-set code will appear in the information display for a few seconds.

Note: *The code may not display until after any other warning messages first display.*

INTERIOR LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT RELEASE

WARNINGS



Keep vehicle doors and luggage compartment locked and keep keys and remote transmitters out of a child's reach. Unsupervised children could lock themselves in the trunk and risk injury. Children should be taught not to play in vehicles.

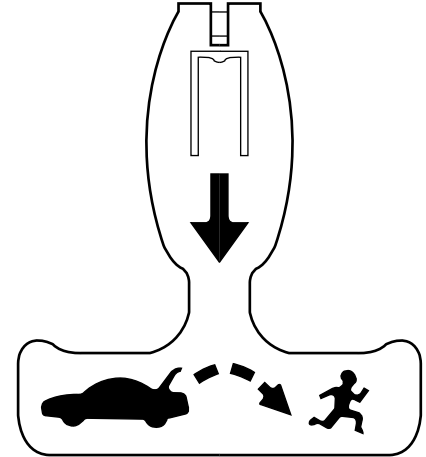
WARNINGS



Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. On hot days, the temperature in the luggage compartment or vehicle interior can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat-related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

Your vehicle is equipped with a release handle that provides a means of escape for children and adults if they become locked inside the luggage compartment.

Adults should familiarize themselves with the operation and location of the release handle.



E144403

The handle is located inside the luggage compartment either on the luggage compartment door (lid) or near the tail lamps. It is composed of a material that will glow for hours in darkness following brief exposure to ambient light.

Locks

Pull the handle and push up on the luggage compartment door (lid) to open from within the luggage compartment.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P R O C E S S

Security

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

Note: *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and a loss of security protection.*

Note: *Metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain may cause vehicle starting problems if they are too close to the key when starting your vehicle. Prevent these objects from touching the coded key while starting your vehicle. Switch the ignition off, move all objects on the key chain away from the coded key and restart your vehicle if a problem occurs.*

Note: *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle. The system is an engine immobilization system. It will not start without a coded key programmed to your vehicle. If you use the wrong key, a message may appear in the information display.*

SecuriLock

The system helps prevent your vehicle from starting unless you use a coded key programmed to your vehicle. Using the wrong key may prevent your vehicle from starting. A message may appear in the information display.

If you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key, it is not operating properly. A message may appear in the information display.

Automatic Arming

Your vehicle arms immediately after switching the ignition off.

Automatic Disarming

Switching the ignition on with a coded key disarms your vehicle.

Replacement Keys

Note: *Your vehicle comes equipped with two intelligent access keys.*

The intelligent access key functions as a programmed key that operates the driver door lock and activates the intelligent access with push button start system, as well as a remote control.

If your programmed transmitters are lost or stolen and you do not have an extra coded key, you will need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. You need to erase the key codes from your vehicle and program new coded keys.

Store an extra programmed key away from your vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. Contact your authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

Programming a Spare Intelligent Access Key

Note: *You can program a maximum of four intelligent access keys to your vehicle.*

You must have two previously programmed intelligent access keys inside your vehicle and the new unprogrammed intelligent access keys readily accessible. Contact an authorized dealer to have the spare key programmed if two previously programmed keys are not available.

Security

Make sure that your vehicle is off before beginning this procedure. Make sure that you close all the doors before beginning and that they remain closed throughout the procedure. Perform all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence. Stop and wait for at least one minute before starting again if you perform any steps out of sequence.

Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.



E173591

1. Place the first programmed key in the backup slot beneath the glovebox door, then press the push button ignition switch.
2. Wait five seconds and then press the push button ignition switch again.
3. Remove the intelligent access key.

4. Within 10 seconds, place a second programmed intelligent access key in the backup slot. Press the push button ignition switch.
5. Wait five seconds and then press the push button ignition switch again.
6. Remove the intelligent access key.
7. Place the unprogrammed intelligent access key in the backup slot and press the push button ignition switch.

Programming is now complete. Verify the remote control functions operate and your vehicle starts with the new intelligent access key.

If programming was not successful, wait 10 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 7. If you are still unsuccessful, take your vehicle to your authorized dealer.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM (If Equipped)

The system will warn you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle. Anyone opening any door, the luggage compartment or the hood without using a valid key, remote control or keyless entry keypad will set off the alarm.

The turn signal lamps will flash and sound the horn up to a total of 10 times.

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

Arming the Alarm

The alarm is ready to arm when there is not a key in the ignition. Electronically lock the vehicle to arm the alarm.

Disarming the Alarm

To disarm the alarm do any of the following:

- Press the power door unlock button within the 20-second pre-arm period.
- Unlock the doors with the keyless entry pad.
- Press the unlock button on the remote control.
- Enter the vehicle using intelligent access.
- Press the panic button on the remote control. The alarm system remains armed, but the horn and turn indicators shut off.


Note: If the driver door is unlocked with a key, a tone will sound when you open the door and a message will appear in the information display. You will have 12 seconds to disarm the alarm using any of the actions above, otherwise the alarm goes off.

Steering Wheel

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 109).

WARNING

 Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.



E161834

Use the control on the side of the steering column to adjust the position.

To adjust:

- Tilt: Press the top or bottom of the control.
- Telescope: Press the front or rear of the control.

The steering column sets a stopping position just short of the end of the column position to prevent damage to the steering column. A new stopping position sets if the steering column encounters an object when tilting or telescoping.

To reset the steering column to its normal stopping position:

1. Press the steering column control again after encountering the new stopping position.
2. Continue pressing the control until it reaches the end of the column position.

A new stopping position is set. The next time you tilt or telescope the steering column, it will stop just short of the end of the column position.

Memory Feature

You can save and recall the steering column position with the memory function. See **Memory Function** (page 114).

Note: Pressing the adjustment control during memory recall cancels the operation. The column responds to the adjustment control.

Easy Entry and Exit Feature (If Equipped)

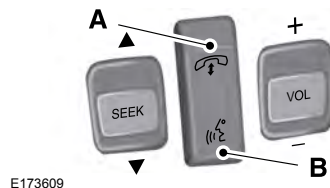
When you switch the ignition off, the steering column will move to the full up position to allow extra room to exit your vehicle. The column will return to the previous setting when you switch the ignition on. You can enable or disable this feature in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 88).

AUDIO CONTROL

You can operate the following functions with the control:

Steering Wheel

VOICE CONTROL (If Equipped)

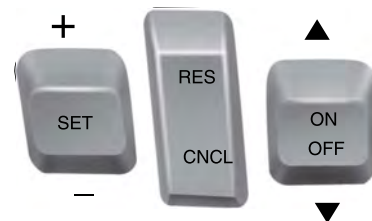


- A Phone mode
- B Voice recognition

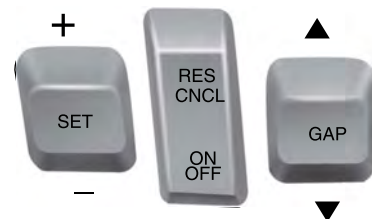
See **MyLincoln Touch™** (page 303).

CRUISE CONTROL

Type 1



Type 2



E173608

- A Seek up and down or next
- B Media
- C Volume up or down
- D Mute

Seek and Media

Press the seek button to:

- tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset
- play the next or the previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:

- tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band
- seek through a track.

Press the media button repeatedly to:

- scroll through available audio modes.

Steering Wheel

See **Cruise Control** (page 163).

INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL



E173617

See **Information Displays** (page 88).

Cluster Display Control Features



E173616

Use this control to access some of the MyLincoln Touch features in the information display. Navigate through the screen and press **OK** to select. See **MyLincoln Touch™** (page 303).

HEATED STEERING WHEEL (If Equipped)

See **MyLincoln Touch™** (page 303).



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E-PROCESS

Pedals (If Equipped)

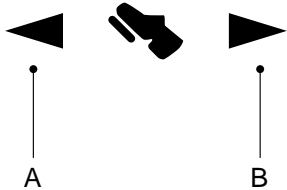
ADJUSTING THE PEDALS

WARNING



Never use the controls while your feet are on the accelerator and brake pedals and the vehicle is moving.

You can find the control on the left side of the steering column. Press and hold the appropriate side of the control to move the pedals.



E162916

A. Farther

B. Closer

You can save and recall the pedal positions with the memory feature. See **Memory Function** (page 114).

Note: Adjust the pedals only when your vehicle is in **P** (Park).



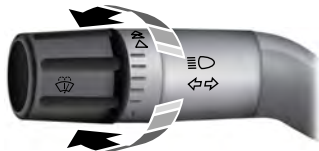
Information Provided by:

DEALER
PROCESS

68

Wipers and Washers

WINDSHIELD WIPERS



E173262

Rotate the end of the control away from you to increase the speed of the wipers. Rotate toward you to decrease the speed of the wipers.

Note: Fully defrost the windshield before switching on the windshield wipers.

Note: Make sure you switch off the windshield wipers before entering a car wash.

Note: Clean the windshield and wiper blades if they begin to leave streaks or smears. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.

Note: Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

AUTOWIPERS (If Equipped)



E173262

Adjust the rotary control to increase or decrease the sensitivity of the rain sensor. On the lowest sensitivity setting, the wipers turn on when there is a large amount of moisture on the windshield. On the highest sensitivity setting, the wipers turn on when there is a small amount of moisture on the windshield.

Autowipers uses a rain sensor, located near the interior mirror. The rain sensor monitors the amount of moisture on the windshield. It turns on the wipers and adjusts the wiper speed by the amount of moisture that the sensor detects on the windshield. You can turn this feature on and off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 88).

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive. If the area around the mirror is dirty, then the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

Note: Fully defrost the windshield before you switch on the windshield wipers.

Note: Make sure you switch off the windshield wipers before entering a car wash.

Note: Clean the windshield and wiper blades if they begin to leave streaks or smears. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.

Note: If you switch autolamps on in conjunction with autowipers, your low beam headlamps will turn on automatically when the rain sensor turns on the windshield wipers continuously.

Wipers and Washers

Note: Wet or winter driving conditions with ice, snow or salty road mist can cause inconsistent and unexpected wiping or smearing.

In these conditions, you can do the following to help keep your windshield clear:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing.
- Adjust the rotary control to normal or high-speed wipe.
- Switch off the autowipers.

WINDSHIELD WASHERS



Press the end of the stalk to operate the washer.

- A brief press causes a single wipe without washer fluid.
- A quick press and hold causes the wipers to swipe three times with washer fluid.
- A long press and hold will operate the wipers and washer fluid for a short time.

A wipe will occur a few seconds after washing to clear any remaining washer fluid. This feature can be switched on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 88).

Note: Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.

E173263

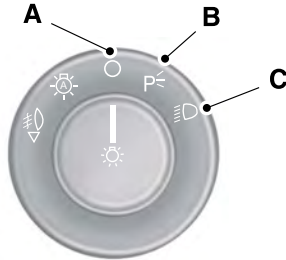


Information Provided by:

DEALER
ELECTRONICS

Lighting

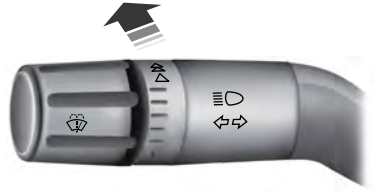
LIGHTING CONTROL



E173257

- A Off
- B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps
- C Headlamps

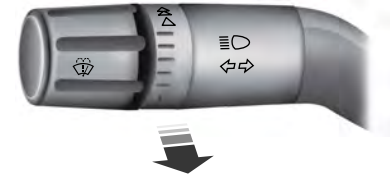
High Beams



E167827

Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.
Push the lever away from you again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Headlamp Flasher



E163268

Pull the lever toward you slightly and release it to flash the headlamps.

AUTOLAMPS

WARNING



The autolamps switch position may not activate the headlamps in all low visibility conditions, such as daytime fog. Make sure the headlamps are switched to auto or on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
EXPERIENCE

Lighting



E173258

When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, the headlamps automatically turn on in low light situations or when the wipers activate.

If equipped, the following also activate when the lighting control is in the autolamps position and you switch them on in the information display:

- Configurable daytime running lamps.
- Automatic high beam control.
- Adaptive headlamp control.

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the information display controls to adjust the period of time that the headlamps remain on. See **Information Displays** (page 88).

Note: With the headlamps in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the high beam headlamps on until the autolamps system turns the low beam headlamps on.

Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps

The windshield wiper activated headlamps turn on within 10 seconds when you switch the windshield wipers on and the lighting control is in the autolamps position. They turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the windshield wipers off.

The headlamps do not turn on by wiper activation:

- During a mist wipe.
- When the wipers are on to clear washer fluid during a wash condition.
- If the wipers are in intermittent mode.

Note: If you switch autolamps and autowipers on, the headlamps will automatically turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

Note: If you disconnect and connect the battery, or fully discharge and charge the battery, the lighting level will switch to the maximum setting.



E173259

Use the instrument lighting dimmer to adjust the brightness of the instrument panel and all applicable lighting in your vehicle.

- Tap the top or bottom of the control to the first detent to brighten or dim all interior lighting incrementally.
- Press and hold the top or bottom of the control to the first detent until you reach the desired lighting level.

Lighting

- Press and hold the top of the control to the second detent to switch the interior lights on.
- Press and hold the bottom of the control to the second detent to switch the interior lights off.

HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS (if Equipped)

WARNING



The daytime running lamps system does not activate the tail lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Also, the autolamps switch position may not activate the headlamps in all low visibility conditions, such as daytime fog. Always ensure that your headlamps are switched to auto or on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a collision.

Type 1 - Conventional (Non-Configurable)

When you switch the ignition to the on position and the lighting control is in the off, autolamps or parking lamp position, the daytime running lamps will turn on whenever the headlamps are off. They turn off only when the headlamps are on.

Type 2 - Configurable

Note: If this type is equipped, you are able to switch the daytime running lamps on or off using the information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 88).

When the daytime running lamps are switched on in the information display and you switch the ignition to the on position with the lighting control in the autolamps position, the daytime running lamps turn on whenever the headlamps are off.

The other lighting control switch positions do not activate the daytime running lamps and can be used to temporarily override autolamp control.

When switched off in the information display, the daytime running lamps are off in all lighting control switch positions.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E-P-R-C-E-S-S

Lighting

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL (If Equipped)

The system will automatically turn on your high beams if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. When it detects the headlights of an approaching vehicle, the tail lamps of the preceding vehicle or street lighting, the system will turn off the high beams before they distract other drivers. The low beams remain on.

Note: If it appears that automatic control of the high beams is not functioning properly, check the windshield in front of the camera for a blockage. A clear view of the road is required for proper system operation. Have any windshield damage in the area of the camera's field-of-view repaired.

Note: If the system detects a blockage such as bird droppings, bug splatter, snow or ice, and you do not observe changes, the system will go into low beam mode until you clear the blockage. A message may also appear in the instrument cluster display noting the front camera is blocked.

Note: Typical road dust, dirt and water spots will not affect the performance of the automatic high beam system. However, in cold or inclement weather conditions, you will notice a decrease in the availability of the high beam system, especially at start up. If you want to change the beam state independently of the automatic control, you may switch the high beams on or off using the lever. Automatic control will resume when conditions are correct.

Note: Modification of the vehicle ride height such as using much larger tires, may degrade feature performance.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to decide when to turn the high beams off and on.

Once the system is active, the high beams will turn on if:

- The ambient light level is low enough.
- There is no traffic in front of the vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than 32 mph (52 km/h).

The high beams will turn off if:

- The system detects the headlamps of an approaching vehicle or the tail lamps of a preceding vehicle.
- Vehicle speed falls below 27 mph (44 km/h).
- The ambient light level is high enough that high beams are not required.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The camera is blocked.

Activating the System

Switch on the system using the information display and autolamps. See **Information Displays** (page 88). See **Autolamps** (page 71).

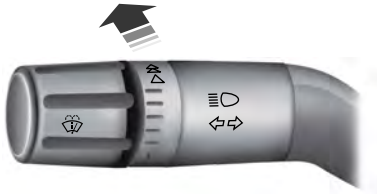


E173258

Lighting

Switch the lighting control to the autolamps position.

Manually Overriding the System



E167827

When the automatic control has activated the high beams, pushing or pulling the stalk will provide a temporary override to low beam.

Use the information display menu to permanently deactivate the system, or switch the lighting control from autolamps to headlamps.

FRONT FOG LAMPS



E193834

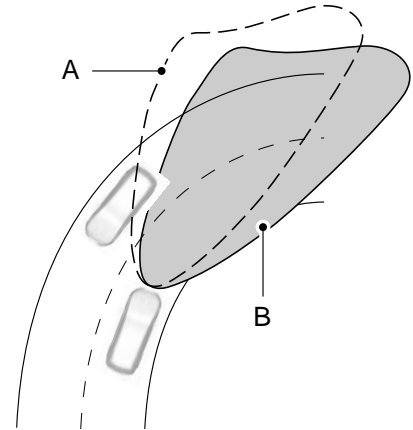
Pull the lighting control toward you to switch the fog lamps on.

You can switch the fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except Off and the high beams are not on.

ADAPTIVE HEADLAMPS

The headlamp beams move in the same direction as the steering wheel. This provides more visibility when driving around curves.

- A. Without adaptive headlamps.
- B. With adaptive headlamps.



E161714

The system only works with the lighting control in the autolamp position.

Note: There is a delay of two to five seconds before the system operates when you drive your vehicle.

Lighting

Note: The system is only active at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h).

The system has a power-up movement check feature. When you start your vehicle, the lamps track left to right, then back to center to alert the driver that the system is working properly.

DIRECTION INDICATORS



E163272

- To operate the left-hand direction indicator, push the lever down until it stops.
- To operate the right-hand direction indicator, push the lever up until it stops.
- To manually cancel direction indicator operation, push the lever again in either direction.

Lane Change

To indicate a left or right lane change:

- Push the lever up or down to the first stop position and release. The direction indicator will flash three times and stop.
- Push the lever up or down to the first stop position and hold. The direction indicator will flash for as long as you hold the lever in this position.

INTERIOR LAMPS

The lamps will switch on when you have met one of the following conditions:

- You open any door.
- You press a remote control button.
- You press the outer edge of the clear lens on the front row map lamp.

Front Row Map Lamps



E166237

To switch on the map lamps, press the outer edge of the clear lens.

The front row map lamp will automatically turn on when:

- Any door is opened.
- You press and hold the top of the instrument lighting dimmer switch past the first detent.
- You press any of the remote entry controls and the ignition is in the off position.

Lighting

Second Row Map Lamps



E173272

The second row lamps light when:

- Any door is open.
- You press and hold the top of the instrument lighting dimmer switch past the first detent.
- You press any of the remote entry controls and the ignition is in the off position.

Press the lamp lens to activate the reading lamps.

AMBIENT LIGHTING

The ambient lighting system is adjusted with the MyLincoln Touch. See **MyLincoln Touch™** (page 303).



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E-PROCESS

Windows and Mirrors

POWER WINDOWS

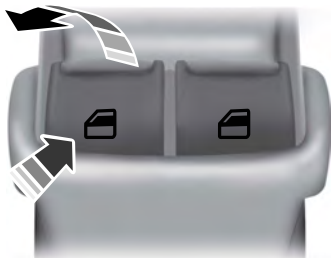
WARNINGS



Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.



When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



E146043

Press the control to open the window.

Lift the control to close the window.

Note: You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.

One-Touch Down

Press the control fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Up

Lift the control fully and release it. Press or lift the control again to stop the window.

Global Opening (If Equipped)

Press and hold the unlock button on the remote control to open the front windows and vent the moonroof. Release the button when the motion starts. The windows and moonroof continue opening.

Press the lock or unlock button on the remote control to stop the motion.

Note: The ignition must be off and the accessory delay feature must remain off to operate this feature.

Note: To disable this feature, contact your authorized dealer.

Bounce-Back

The window stops automatically while closing. It reverses some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

WARNING



When you override the bounce-back feature the window will not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Pull the window control up and hold within two seconds of the window reaching the bounce-back position. The window travels up with no bounce-back protection. The window stops if you release the control before the window closes fully.

Windows and Mirrors

Window Lock



E144072

Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It lights when you lock the rear window controls.

Accessory Delay

You can use the window controls for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open either front door.

EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Power Exterior Mirrors

WARNING



Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving.



E144073

- A Left-hand mirror
- B Adjustment control
- C Right-hand mirror

To adjust a mirror:

1. Select the mirror you want to adjust. The control will illuminate.
2. Adjust the position of the mirror.
3. Press the mirror switch again.

Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

Heated Exterior Mirrors

See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 107).

Memory Mirrors

You can save and recall the mirror positions through the memory function. See **Memory Function** (page 114).

Auto-Dimming Feature

The driver's exterior mirror will automatically dim when the interior auto-dimming mirror is activated.

Integrated Blind Spot Mirrors (If Equipped)

WARNING



Objects in the blind spot mirror are closer than they appear.

Blind spot mirrors have an integrated convex mirror built into the upper outboard corner of the exterior mirrors. They are designed to increase your visibility along the side of your vehicle.

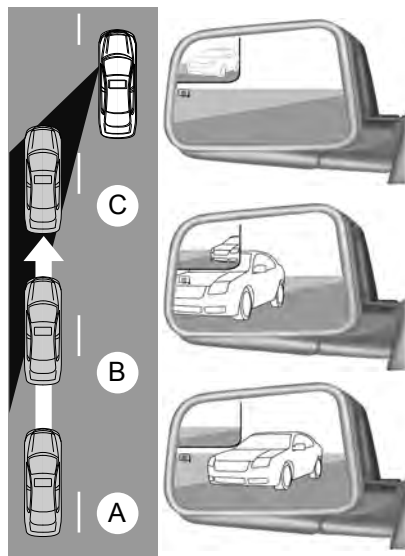


Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P - P - C - E - S

Windows and Mirrors

Check the main mirror first before a lane change, then check the blind spot mirror. If no vehicles are present in the blind spot mirror and the traffic in the adjacent lane is at a safe distance, signal that you intend to change lanes. Glance over your shoulder to verify traffic is clear and carefully change lanes.



E138665

The image of the approaching vehicle is small and near the inboard edge of the main mirror when it is at a distance. The image becomes larger and begins to move outboard across the main mirror as the vehicle approaches (A). The image will transition from the main mirror and begin to appear in the blind spot mirror as the vehicle approaches (B). The vehicle will transition to your peripheral field of view as it leaves the blind spot mirror (C).

Blind Spot Monitor (If Equipped)

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 176).

INTERIOR MIRROR

WARNING



Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

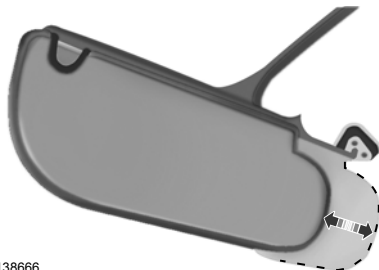
Windows and Mirrors

Auto-Dimming Mirror

Note: Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.

The mirror will dim automatically to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

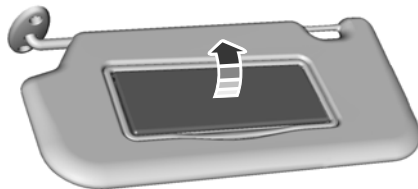
SUN VISORS



E138666

Rotate the sun visor toward the side window and extend it rearward for extra shade.

Illuminated Vanity Mirror



E162197

Lift the cover to switch the lamp on.

SUN SHADES (If Equipped)

Note: Do not try to move the sun shade manually.

The power rear sun shade covers the rear window of the vehicle.



E187440

The control is on the center console.

The sun shade has a one-touch up and down feature. Press and release the control to move the sun shade. To stop motion, press the control a second time.

The sun shade automatically retracts when you shift the transmission into reverse (R).

MOONROOF (If Equipped)

WARNINGS



Do not let children play with the moonroof or leave them unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.



Information Provided by:
DEALER
EXPERIENCE

Windows and Mirrors

WARNINGS

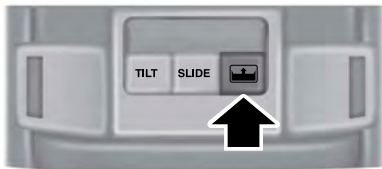


When closing the dual panel moonroof, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

The moonroof and sunscreen controls are on the overhead console.

The moonroof and sunscreen have a one-touch open and close feature. To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, touch the control a second time.

Opening and Closing the Sunscreen



E187439

Press and release the control to open the sunscreen.

Note: *The sunscreen stops at the first panel for the dual panel moonroof. Press and release the control again to continue opening the sunscreen past the second panel.*

Pull and release the control to close the sunscreen. If open, the moonroof automatically closes prior to the sunscreen closing.

Opening and Closing the Moonroof

Press and release the SLIDE control to open the moonroof. The sunscreen, if closed, automatically opens prior to the moonroof opening.

Pull and release the SLIDE control to close the moonroof.

Bounce-Back

The moonroof automatically stops closing and reverses if it detects an obstacle when closing.

To override the bounce-back function, pull and hold the SLIDE control within two seconds of a bounce-back event. In this case, the closing force begins to increase each of the next three times the moonroof closes.

Venting the Moonroof

Press and release the TILT control to vent the moonroof.

Pull and release the TILT control to close the moonroof.



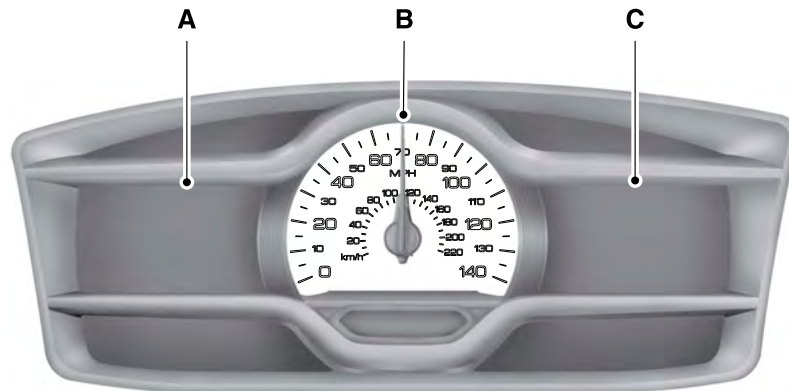
Information Provided by:

82 DEALER
PROCESS

Instrument Cluster

GAUGES

Note: Cluster shown in standard measure – metric clusters similar.



E173225

- A Left information display. See **General Information** (page 88).
- B Speedometer
- C Right information display. See **General Information** (page 303).



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P - R - O - C - E - S - S

Instrument Cluster

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators will alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

Note: Some warning indicators appear in the information display and function the same as a warning lamp, but do not display when you start your vehicle.

Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)



The speed control system indicator light changes color to indicate what mode the system is in: See

Using Adaptive Cruise Control (page 164).

On (white light): Illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is turned on. Turns off when the speed control system is turned off.

Engaged (green light): Illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is engaged. Turns off when the speed control system is disengaged.

Anti-Lock Braking System



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have the normal braking system (without ABS) unless the brake system warning lamp is also illuminated. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

Battery



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

Brake System



It will illuminate when you engage the parking brake with the ignition on.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction. Have the system checked immediately by your authorized dealer.

WARNING



Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

Cruise Control (If Equipped)



It will illuminate when you switch this feature on.

Direction Indicator



Illuminates when the left or right turn signal or the hazard warning flasher is turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 252).

Door Ajar



Displays when the ignition is on and any door is not completely closed.

Instrument Cluster

Engine Coolant Temperature



Illuminates when the engine coolant temperature is high. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, switch off the engine and let cool. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 240).

Engine Oil



If it illuminates with the engine running or when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 239).

Note: Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

Fasten Safety Belt



It will illuminate and a chime will sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt. See **Safety Belt Minder** (page 32).

Front Airbag



If it fails to illuminate when you start your vehicle, continues to flash or remains on, it indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

Front Fog Lamps (If Equipped)



Lights when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Grade Assist (If Equipped)



It will illuminate when the grade assist function has been turned on.

Heads Up Display (If Equipped)



A red beam of lights will illuminate on the windshield in certain instances when using adaptive cruise control and/or the collision warning system. It will also illuminate momentarily when you start your vehicle to make sure the display works.

High Beam



It will illuminate when you switch the high beam headlamps on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

Low Fuel Level



It will illuminate when the fuel level is low or the fuel tank is nearly empty. Refuel as soon as possible.

Low Tire Pressure Warning



It will illuminate when your tire pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check your tire pressure as soon as possible.

It will also illuminate momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

Low Washer Fluid



It will illuminate when the windshield washer fluid is low.

Instrument Cluster

Parking Lamps



It will illuminate when you switch the parking lamps on.

Powertrain Fault



Illuminates when a powertrain or an AWD fault has been detected. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Service Engine Soon



If the service engine soon indicator light stays illuminated after the engine is started, it indicates that the On Board Diagnostics system (OBD) has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emissions control system. Refer to On board diagnostics (OBD) in the Fuel and Refueling chapter for more information about having your vehicle serviced. See **Emission Control System** (page 136).

If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately.

WARNING



Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire. Have an authorized dealer service your vehicle immediately.

The service engine soon indicator light illuminates when the ignition is first turned on prior to engine start to check the bulb and to indicate whether the vehicle is ready for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing.

Normally, the service engine soon light will stay on until the engine is cranked, then turn itself off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds the service engine soon light blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. See **Emission Control System** (page 136).

Stability Control



It will flash when the system is active. If it remains illuminated or does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction the system will switch off. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately. See **Using Stability Control** (page 152).

Stability Control Off



It will illuminate when you switch the system off. It will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 152).

AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

Key in Ignition Warning Chime

Sounds when you open the driver's door and you have left the key in the ignition with it in the off or accessory position.

Instrument Cluster

Keyless Warning Alert (If Equipped)

Sounds the horn twice when you exit your vehicle with the intelligent access key, after the last door is closed and your keyless vehicle is in RUN, indicating your vehicle is still on.

Headlamps On Warning Chime

Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver's door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

Parking Brake On Warning Chime

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.




Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P - R - C - E - S

Information Displays

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

 Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Various systems on your vehicle can be controlled using the information display controls on the steering wheel. Corresponding information is displayed in the information display.

Information Display Controls



E173228

- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a sub-menu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a menu.
- Press and hold the left arrow button at any time to return to the main menu display (escape button).
- Press the OK button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

Main menu

From the main menu bar on the left side of the information display, you can choose from the following categories:

Scroll up or down to highlight one of the categories and then press the right arrow key or OK to enter into that category. Press the left arrow key as needed to exit back to the main menu.

- Display Mode
- Trip 1 & 2
- Fuel Economy
- Driver Assist
- Settings

Display Mode

Use the up or down arrow buttons to choose between the following display options.

Information Displays

Display mode			
Display mode	Option 1	Option 2	Option 3
XXX mi (km) to empty	X	-	-
Bar tachometer	X	-	-
Round tachometer	-	X	X
Engine coolant temp gauge	-	-	X
Fuel gauge	Always Present		
Total odometer (lower left corner)	Always Present		
Regardless of display mode chosen, when you use the SelectShift Automatic™ transmission (SST, the cluster will change to the round tachometer if not already selected. After the round tachometer displays, other display modes with the bar tachometer can also be chosen.			

XXX mi (km) to empty

Shows approximate fuel level before the fuel tank reaches empty. The value is dynamic and can change (raise or lower) depending on driving style.

Fuel gauge

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank. The arrow next to the fuel pump symbol shows the fuel filler door side of your vehicle. When the fuel level becomes low, the level indicator will change to amber. When the fuel level becomes critically low, the level indicator will change to red.

Note: The fuel gauge level may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or when driving on a slope.

Note: When a MyKey® is in use, low fuel warnings will display earlier.

Bar or Round tachometer

Indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute. Driving with your tachometer pointer continuously at the top of the scale may damage the engine. During SelectShift Automatic™ transmission (SST) use, the currently selected gear will appear in the display.

Information Displays

Engine coolant temperature gauge

Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the level indicator will be in the normal range. If the

engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.

Trip 1 & 2

Choose between the following trip displays.

Trip 1 & 2
Trip distance
Average fuel economy
Elapsed trip time
Hold OK to Reset

Note: Press and hold OK to reset the currently displayed trip information.

Trip distance

Shows the accumulated trip distance.

Average fuel economy

Shows the average fuel economy for a given trip.

Elapsed trip time

When you switch off your vehicle the timer stops and restarts when you restart your vehicle.

Fuel Economy

Use the left or right arrow buttons to choose the desired fuel economy display.

Fuel Economy
Inst Fuel Economy
30 Min Fuel History

Information Displays

Note: Press and hold OK to reset the currently displayed fuel usage information.

Inst Fuel Economy

This display shows a visual graph of your instantaneous fuel economy.

30 Min Fuel History

This display shows a bar chart of your fuel history.

Driver Assist

Use the up or down arrow buttons to choose between the following display options.

Note: Some items are optional and may not appear.

Driver Assist		
Traction Control - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
Blindspot - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
Collision Warn	Sensitivity	High, Normal or Low
Cross Traffic - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
Cruise Control	Adaptive or Normal	—
Driver Alert - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
Lane Keeping	Mode	Alert, Aid or Both
	Intensity	High, Normal or Low
Front Park Aid - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
Rear Park Aid - check enabled or uncheck disabled		

Settings

In this mode, you can configure different driver setting choices.

Note: Some items are optional and may not appear.

Information Displays

Settings				
Vehicle	Drive Control	Handling in D	Comfort, Normal or Sport	
		Handling in S	Normal or Sport	
	Auto Engine Off - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
	DTE Calculation	Normal or Towing		
	Easy Entry / Exit - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
	Lighting	Adaptive Head Lamps	Traffic Set Up	Right Hand or Left Hand Traffic
		Auto Highbeam	On or Off	
		Autolamp Delay	Select time interval	

Settings (cont'd)			
Vehicle (cont'd)	Locks	Autolock - check enabled or uncheck disabled	
		Autounlock - check enabled or uncheck disabled	
		Remote Unlocking	All doors or Driver door
	Oil Life Reset	Remaining Life XXX% - Hold OK to Reset	

Note: Some MyKey items will only appear if a MyKey is set.

Information Displays

Settings (cont'd)			
Vehicle (cont'd)	Remote Start	Climate Control	Auto or Last Settings
		Front Seats Front Seats and Steering Wheel	Auto Heated or Off
		Duration	5, 10 or 15 minutes
		System - check enabled or uncheck disabled	
	Windows	Remote Open - check enabled or uncheck disabled	
		Remote Close - check enabled or uncheck disabled	
	Wipers	Courtesy Wipe - check enabled or uncheck disabled	
		Rain Sensing - check enabled or uncheck disabled	
	MyKey	Mykey Status	MyKeys and Admin Keys
		Create MyKey	Hold OK to Create MyKey
		911 Assist	Always On or User Selectable
		Traction Control	Always On or User Selectable
		Max Speed	Choose desired speed or off
		Speed Minder	Choose desired speed or off
		Volume Limiter	On or Off
		Do Not Disturb	Always On or User Selectable
		MyKey Report	On or Off



Information Provided by:

DEALER
EXPERIENCE

Information Displays

Settings (cont'd)		
	Clear MyKeys	Hold OK to Clear All MyKeys
Display Settings	Distance	Miles & GAL, l/100km or km/l
	Gauge Display	Fuel Gauge or Fuel + Tach
	Language	Choose your applicable setting - Hold OK to Set
	Temperature	Fahrenheit (°F) or Celsius (°C)

INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: Depending on the vehicle options equipped with your vehicle, not all of the messages will display or be available. Certain messages may be abbreviated or shortened depending upon which cluster type you have.

E173229



Press the OK button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. Other messages will be removed automatically after a short time.

Certain messages need to be confirmed before you can access the menus.

Information Displays

Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Action
Adaptive Cruise Malfunction	A radar malfunction is preventing the adaptive cruise from engaging. See Using Adaptive Cruise Control (page 164).
Adaptive Cruise Not Available	Conditions exist such that the adaptive cruise cannot function properly. See Using Adaptive Cruise Control (page 164).
Adaptive Cruise Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	The radar is blocked because of poor radar visibility due to bad weather or ice/mud/water in front of radar. Driver can typically clean the sensor to resolve. See Using Adaptive Cruise Control (page 164).

AdvanceTrac™

Message	Action
Service AdvanceTrac	The system detects a malfunction due to a blocked sensor.
AdvanceTrac Off On	The traction control has been disabled or enabled by the driver.

Alarm

Message	Action
Vehicle Alarm To Stop Alarm, Start Vehicle	The alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry. See Anti-Theft Alarm (page 64).



Information Displays

Automatic Engine Shutdown

Message	Action
Engine Shuts Off in XX Seconds	The engine is getting ready to shut off.
Engine Shut Off for Fuel Economy	The engine has shut off to help increase fuel economy.
Engine Shuts Off in XX Seconds Press Ok to Override	The engine is getting ready to shut off. You can press OK on the left steering wheel button to override the shut down.

AWD

Message	Action
AWD Off	The all-wheel drive system has automatically disabled itself due to the system overheating or you are using the spare tire. The all-wheel drive system will resume normal function and clear this message after cycling the ignition and driving a short distance with the road tire re-installed or after the system cools.
Check AWD	The all-wheel drive system is not operating properly and the powertrain fault indicator is illuminated. See Warning Lamps and Indicators (page 84). If the warning stays illuminated or continues to illuminate, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
PROCESS

Information Displays

Battery and Charging System

Message	Action
Check Charging System	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Turn Power Off to Save Battery	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.

Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System

Message	Action
Blindspot System Fault	A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Blindspot Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	The system sensors are blocked. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible. See Blind Spot Information System (page 176).
Vehicle Coming From X	The system detects a vehicle. See Blind Spot Information System (page 176).
Cross Traffic Not Available Sensor Blocked	The blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See Blind Spot Information System (page 176).
Cross Traffic System Fault	A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
EXPERIENCE

Information Displays

Brake System

Message	Action
Brake Fluid Level LOW	The brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. See Brake Fluid Check (page 247).
Check Brake System	The brake system needs servicing. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Park Brake Engaged	The parking brake is set, the engine is running and you drive your vehicle more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Collision Warning System

Message	Action
Collision Warning Malfunction	There is a system malfunction with the collision warning system. The system will be disabled. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Collision Warning Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	The collision warning system radar is blocked because of poor radar visibility due to bad weather or ice/mud/water in front of the radar. Driver can typically clean the sensor to resolve. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Collision Warning Not Available	There is a system malfunction with the collision warning system. The system will be disabled. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Information Displays

Doors and Locks

Message	Action
X Door Ajar	The door listed is not completely closed.
Trunk Ajar	The luggage compartment is not completely closed.
Engine On	The driver's door is opened, your vehicle is in park and the engine is on.

Fuel

Message	Action
Fuel Level LOW	An early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.

Keys and Intelligent Access

Message	Action
Press Brake to START	A reminder to press the brake while starting your vehicle.
No Key Detected	The key is not detected by the system. See Keyless Starting (page 126).
Restart Now or Key is Needed	The Start Stop button is pressed to shut off the engine and an Intelligent Access key is not detected inside your vehicle.
Accessory Power is Active	Your vehicle is in the accessory ignition state.

Information Displays

Message	Action
Starting System Fault	There is a problem with your vehicle's starting system. See an authorized dealer for service.
Key Programmed x Keys Total	During spare key programming, an intelligent access key is programmed to the system.
Max Number of Keys Learned	During spare key programming, the maximum number of keys have been programmed.

Lane Keeping System

Message	Action
Lane Keeping Sys. Malfunction Service Required	The system has malfunctioned. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The system has detected a condition that requires the windshield to be cleaned to operate properly.
Front Camera Malfunction Service Required	The system has malfunctioned. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	The system requests the driver to keep their hands on the steering wheel.



Information Provided by:

100
DEALER
PROCESS

Information Displays

Maintenance

Message	Action
LOW Engine Oil Pressure	Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, turn off the engine. Check the oil level. If the warning stays on or continues to come on with your engine running, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Change Engine Oil Soon	The engine oil life remaining is 10% or less. See Engine Oil Check (page 239).
Oil Change Required	The oil life left reaches 0%. See Engine Oil Check (page 239).
Engine Coolant Overtemperature	The engine coolant temperature is excessively high.
Washer Fluid Level Low	The washer fluid is low and needs to be refilled.
Transport Mode Contact Dealer	Indicates that your vehicle is still in Transport mode. This may not allow some features to operate properly. Contact an authorized dealer.
Factory Mode Contact Dealer	Indicates that your vehicle is still in Factory mode. This may not allow some features to operate properly. Contact an authorized dealer.

MyKey

Message	Action
MyKey Not Created	MyKey cannot be programmed during key programming .
MyKey Active Drive Safely	MyKey is active.
Speed Limited to XX MPH/km/h	When starting your vehicle, a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on.

Information Displays

Message	Action
Vehicle Near Top Speed	When a MyKey is in use, the MyKey speed limit is on and your vehicle speed is approaching 80 mph (130 km/h).
Check Speed Drive Safely	MyKey is active.
Buckle Up to Unmute Audio	A MyKey is in use and Belt-Minder is activated.
Could Not Program Integrated Key	An attempt is made to program a spare key using two existing MyKeys.

Park Aid

Message	Action
Check Park Aid	The system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer. See Parking Aid (page 153).
Check Rear Park Aid	The system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer. See Parking Aid (page 153).
Rear Park Aid On Off	The park aid status.



Information Provided by:

102 DEALER
E S T A B L I S H E D

Information Displays

Power Steering

Message	Action
Steering Malfunction Service Now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.
Service Power Steering Now	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering Assist Fault	The power steering system has detected a condition within the power steering system or passive entry or passive start system requires service. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering column lock: Remove and re-insert key while turning wheel to unlock	You need to turn the steering wheel in order to disengage the steering lock.

Seats

Message	Action
Occupant Sensor BLOCKED Remove Objects Near Passenger Seat	Objects are by the passenger seat. After the objects are moved away from the seat, if the warning stays on or continues to come on contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.



Information Provided by:
DEALER
E - P - R - E - S - S

Information Displays

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Action
LOW Tire Pressure	One or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page 279).
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	The tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page 279).
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	A tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page 279). If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Transmission

Message	Action
Shift to Park	You switched the engine off and shift select lever is in any position other than P (Park).



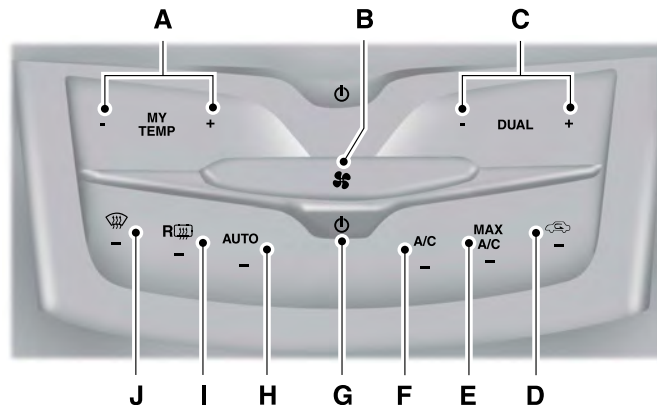
Information Provided by:

104
DEALER
PROCESS

Climate Control

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL

Note: You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See **Settings** (page 313).



E173267

- A – **MY TEMP +:** Adjust the temperature setting using the control on the driver side.
 - B **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
 - C – **DUAL +:** Press to increase or decrease the air temperature for the passenger side of the vehicle.
 - D **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.
- Note:** Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in instrument panel or instrument panel and floor airflow modes during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.

Climate Control

- E **MAX A/C:** Adjust the control for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.
- F **A/C:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.
Note: In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.
- G **Power:** Press the button to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.
- H **AUTO:** Press the button to switch on automatic operation. Adjust to select the desired temperature. Fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air are automatically adjusted to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the desired temperature. You can also turn off dual zone mode by pressing and holding the button for greater than two seconds.
- I **Heated rear window:** Press the button to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 107).
- J **Defrost:** Select to distribute air through the windshield air vents. Air distribution to the instrument panel and footwell vents turns off. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

General Hints

Note: Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

Note: You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

Note: To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

Note: Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

Note: Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

Note: To improve the time to reach comfort in hot weather, drive with the windows slightly open for 2-3 minutes after start-up or until your vehicle airs out.

Automatic Climate Control

Note: Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. The system automatically adjusts to heat or cool the cabin to your selected temperature as quickly as possible. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.

Climate Control

Note: If you select **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs airflow to the windshield and side window vents. In addition, the fan may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.

Note: If you select **AUTO** during hot outside temperatures, or when the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system automatically uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. When the interior reaches the selected temperature, the system automatically switches to using outside air.

Heating the Interior Quickly

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Cooling the Interior Quickly

Press the **MAX A/C** button.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather

1. Press the defrost button.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3. Direct the instrument panel side air vents toward the side windows.
4. Close the instrument panel vents.

HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

Heated Rear Window

Note: Make sure the engine is running before operating the heated windows.



Press the button to clear the heated rear window of thin ice and fog. Press the button to switch the system off. The heated rear window will automatically turn off after a short period of time.

Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This may cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.

Heated Exterior Mirror

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place. These actions could cause damage to the glass and mirrors.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

The heated exterior mirrors will remove ice, mist and fog. When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors will automatically turn on.

Climate Control

CABIN AIR FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a cabin air filter. It is located behind the glove box.

The particulate filtration system reduces the concentration of airborne particles such as dust, spores and pollen in the air supplied to the interior of your vehicle.

Note: *To prevent foreign objects from entering the system, make sure the cabin air is in place at all times. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.*

The particulate filtration system gives you and your passengers the following benefits:

- It improves your driving comfort by reducing particle concentration.
- It improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- It protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

Replace the filter at regular intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 392).

For additional cabin air filter information, or to replace the filter, see an authorized dealer.

REMOTE START

The remote start feature allows you to pre-condition the interior of your vehicle. The climate control system works to achieve comfort according to your previous settings.

Note: *You cannot adjust the system during remote start operation.*

Turn the ignition on to return the system to its previous settings. You can now make adjustments normally, but you need to turn certain vehicle-dependent features back on, such as:

- Heated seats.
- Cooled seats.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Heated mirrors.
- Heated rear window.

You can adjust the default remote start settings using the information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 88).

Automatic Settings

In hot weather, the system is set to 72°F (22°C). The cooled seats are set to high (if available, and selected to AUTO in the information display).

In moderate weather, the system either heats or cools (based on previous settings). The rear defroster, heated mirrors and heated seats do not automatically switch on.

In cold weather, the system is set to 72°F (22°C). The heated seats are set to high (if available, and selected to AUTO in the information display). The rear defroster and heated mirrors automatically switch on.

Seats

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

WARNINGS



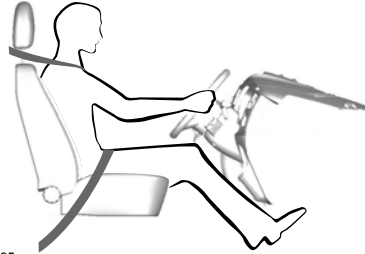
Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.



Do not recline the seatback as this can cause the occupant to slide under the safety belt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a crash.



Do not place objects higher than the seatback to reduce the risk of serious injury in the event of a crash or during heavy braking.



E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, safety belt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seatback more than 30 degrees.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.

- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 in (25 cm) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the safety belt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

HEAD RESTRAINTS

WARNINGS



Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied.

Seats

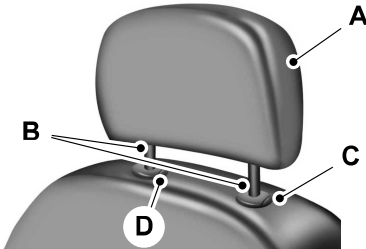
WARNINGS



Install the head restraint properly to help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.

Note: Adjust the seatback to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.

Front seat head restraint



E138642

The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.

- C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

Adjusting the Head Restraint

Raising the Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up.

Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button C.
2. Push the head restraint down.

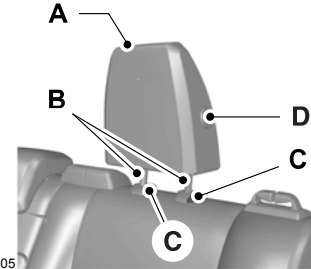
Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold buttons C and D.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

Rear seat non-adjustable outboard head restraints



E162605

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.
- D Fold button.

Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold both C buttons.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

Seats

Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

Folding the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button D.
2. Pull it back up to reset.

Tilting Head Restraints (If Equipped)

The front head restraints tilt for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:



E144727

1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving or riding position.

2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivoting it forward again will then release it to the rearward, untilted position.

POWER SEATS

WARNINGS



Do not adjust the front seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.



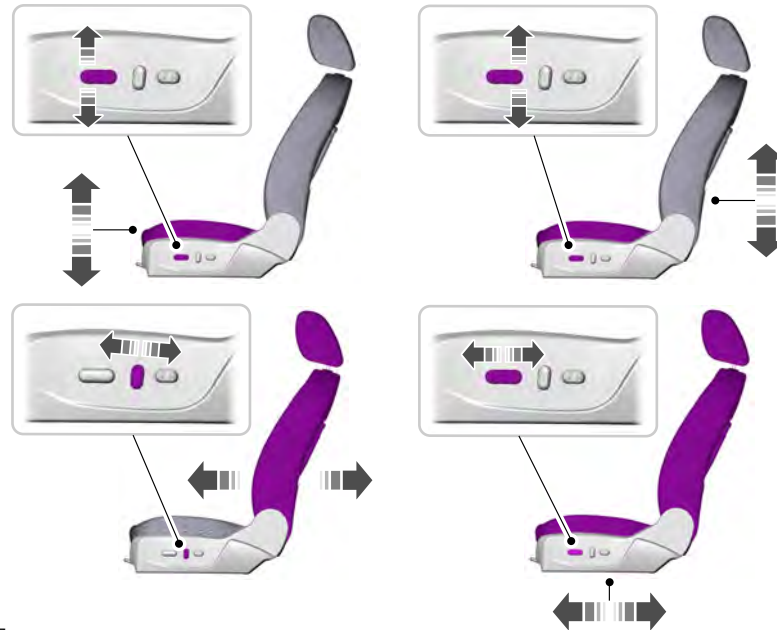
Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P - R - O - C - E - S - S

Seats



E138647



Information Provided by:

DEALER
PROCESS

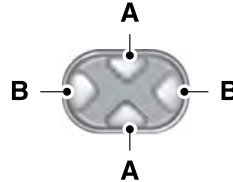
Seats

Note: On vehicles with memory seats, to prevent damage to the seat, the power seats are designed to set a stopping position just short of the end of the seat track. If the seat encounters an object while moving forward or backward, a new stopping position will be set.

To reset the seat to its normal stopping position:

1. After encountering the new stopping position, press the power seat control again to override.
2. Continue pressing the control until it reaches the end of the seat track.
3. Continue pressing the control for about two seconds. You will feel the seat bounce back slightly.

Power Lumbar



E173201

Press the top of the control (A) to raise the height of the lumbar support. Press the bottom of the control (A) to lower the height of the lumbar support.

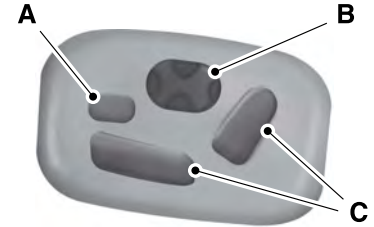
Press the front of the control (B) to adjust firmness. Press the rear of the control (B) to adjust softness.

Multi-Contour Front Seats With Active Motion (If Equipped)

Note: The massage system will turn off after 20 minutes.

Note: The engine must be running or the vehicle must be in accessory mode to activate the seats.

Note: Allow a few seconds for any selection to activate. The seatback and cushion massage cannot function at the same time.



E173202

- A Cushion and seat back massage control.
- B Lumbar control□
- C Power seat controls.

- Seat cushion massage: Press and release the front portion of the massage control (A). Press again to cancel or press the lumbar control to cancel.
- Seatback massage: Press and release the rear portion of the massage button (A). Press again to cancel or press the lumbar control to cancel.
- Lumbar selection: Press either up or down on the lumbar control (B) to select the top, middle, or bottom part of the seatback.

Seats

- Lumbar adjust: Press and hold the front of the lumbar control (B) to increase the firmness of the selected portion of the seatback. Press and hold the rear of the lumbar to decrease the firmness.
- Power seat controls (C).

We recommend first selecting the lumbar to the desired setting and then selecting the back or cushion massage setting.

MEMORY FUNCTION

WARNINGS



Before activating the seat memory, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.



Do not use the memory function when your vehicle is moving.

This feature will automatically recall the position of the driver seat, power mirrors, optional adjustable pedals and optional power steering column. The memory control is located on the driver door.



E142554

Saving a Preset Position

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Adjust the seat, exterior mirrors and power steering column to your desired positions.
3. Press and hold the desired preset button until you hear a tone sound.

You can save up to three preset memory positions. You can save a memory preset at any time.

Recalling a Preset Position

Note: A preset memory position can only be recalled when the ignition is off, or when the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N) (and your vehicle is not moving) if the ignition is on.

You can recall a preset memory position by:

- Pressing the unlock button on your intelligent access key fob if it is linked to a preset position.
- Unlocking the intelligent driver door handle if a linked key fob is present.
- Entering a personal entry code on the Securicode keypad. See **Locks** (page 56).

Note: When the ignition is off, use a linked fob to recall your memory position. This moves the seat and steering column to the Easy Entry position.

Note: During a memory recall, press any seat, mirror control, or any memory control to cancel the operation.

Driving your vehicle will also stop any seat recall movement.

Linking a Preset Position to Your Remote Control or Intelligent Access Key

You can save the preset memory positions for up to three remote controls or intelligent access (IA) keys.

1. With the ignition on, move the memory positions to the desired positions.

Seats

2. Press and hold the desired preset button for a few seconds. A tone will sound. Continue holding until a second tone is heard.
3. Within three seconds, press the lock button on the remote control you are linking.

To unlink a remote control, follow the same procedure – except in Step 3, press the unlock button on the remote control.

Easy Entry and Exit Feature

If you enable the easy entry and exit feature, it automatically moves the driver seat position rearward up to two inches (five centimeters) and the steering column up and forward when you switch the ignition off.

When you switch the ignition on, the driver seat will return to the previous position.

You can enable or disable this feature in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 88).

CLIMATE CONTROLLED SEATS

(If Equipped)

WARNING



Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the seat heater. The seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion, because this may cause the seat heater to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles, or other pointed objects because this may damage the heating element which may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Note: Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

The heated seats will only function when the engine is running.

To operate the heated seats:



E146322

Press the heated seat symbol located on the touchscreen to cycle through the various heat settings and off. Warmer settings are indicated by more indicator lights.

If the engine falls below 350 RPM while the heated seats are on, the feature will turn itself off. You will need to reactivate it.

Cooled Seats

The cooled seats will only function when the engine is running.

To operate the cooled seats:



Information Provided by:

DEALER

Seats



E146309

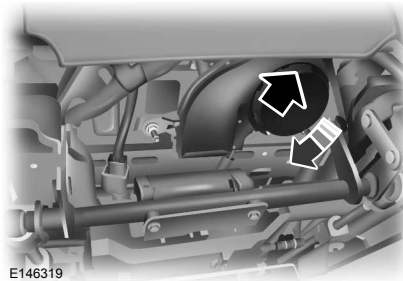
Press the cooled seat symbol located on the touchscreen to cycle through the various cooling settings and off. Cooler settings are indicated by more indicator lights.

If the engine falls below 350 RPM while the cooled seats are on, the feature will turn itself off. You will need to reactivate it.

Heated and Cooled Seat Air Filter Replacement (If Equipped)

The climate controlled seat system includes air filters. You must replace them periodically. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 392).

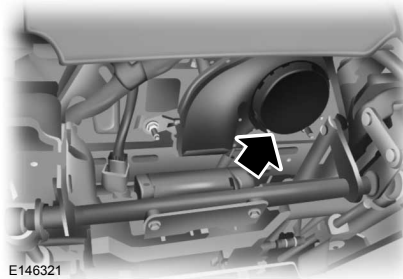
Locate the filters under each front seat and access them from the second-row footwell area. Move the front seats all the way forward and to the full up positions to ease access.



E146319

To remove an air filter:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Push up on the outside rigid edge of the filter and rotate counterclockwise once the tabs are released, then remove the filter.



E146321

To install a filter:

1. First, position the filter in its housing making sure that the far forward end is all the way up in the housing.
2. Push in on the center of the outside edge of the filter and rotate up into the housing until it clips into position.

Rear Heated Seats

WARNING



Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the seat heater. The seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion, because this may cause the seat heater to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles, or other pointed objects because this may damage the heating element which may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Note: Do not do the following:

Seats

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

The rear seat heat controls are located on the rear of the center console.

The heated seats only operate when the ignition is on.

To operate the heated seats:



E166817

- Press the indicated side of the control for minimum heat.
- Press again to turn off.



E146322

- Press the indicated side of the control for maximum heat.
- Press again to turn off.

The indicator light will illuminate when you switch on the heated seats.

REAR SEAT ARMREST



E144635

Fold the armrest down to use the armrest and cupholder. To open the storage lid, pull up on the latch located between the cupholders.

Armrest pass-through

Note: Do not exceed 80 pounds (36 kilograms) of weight on the pass-through door.

Seats



E152622

Release the latch, then pull down on the door located in the back of the armrest. You can store cargo of a longer length such as skis or lumber.



Information Provided by:


DEALER
PROCESS

Universal Garage Door Opener

HomeLink Wireless Control System

(If Equipped)

WARNING

 Do not use the system with any garage door opener that does not have the safety stop and reverse feature as required by U.S. Federal Safety Standards (this includes any garage door opener manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door opener which cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current federal safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases the risk of serious injury or death.

Note: Make sure that the garage door and security device are free from obstruction when you are programming. Do not program the system with the vehicle in the garage.

Note: Make sure you keep the original remote control transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future system programming.

Note: We recommend that upon the sale or lease termination of your vehicle, you erase the programmed function buttons for security reasons. See Erasing the function button codes later in this section.

Note: You can program a maximum of three devices. To change or replace any of the three devices after it has been initially programmed, you must first erase the current settings. See Erasing the function button codes later in this section.



E142657

The universal garage door opener replaces the common hand-held garage door opener with a three-button transmitter that is integrated into the driver's sun visor.

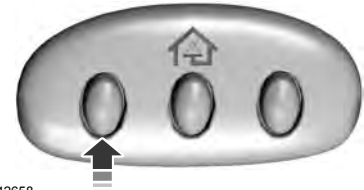
The system includes two primary features, a garage door opener and a platform for remote activation of devices within the home. As well as being programmed for garage doors, the system transmitter can be programmed to operate entry gate operators, security systems, entry door locks and home or office lighting.

Additional system information can be found online at www.homelink.com or by calling the toll-free help line on 1-800-355-3515.

In-vehicle programming

This process is to program your hand-held transmitter and your in-vehicle HomeLink button.

Note: Put a new battery in the hand-held transmitter. This will ensure quicker training and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.



E142658

1. With your vehicle parked outside of the garage, turn your ignition to the **on** position, but do not start your vehicle.
2. Hold your hand-held garage door transmitter 1–3 inches (2–8 centimeters) away from the HomeLink button you want to program.

Universal Garage Door Opener

- Using both hands, simultaneously, press and hold the desired HomeLink button and the hand-held transmitter button. DO NOT release either one until the HomeLink indicator light flashes slowly and then rapidly. When the indicator light flashes rapidly, both buttons may be released. The rapid flashing indicates successful training.
- Press and hold the HomeLink button you programmed for five seconds, then release. You may need to do this twice to activate the door. If your garage door does not operate, watch the HomeLink indicator light.

If the indicator light stays on, the programming is complete. See

Programming your garage door motor later in this section.

If the indicator light flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and then turns to a constant light, the HomeLink button is not programmed yet. Do the following:

Press and hold the HomeLink button while you press and release the hand-held transmitter button every 2 seconds. The HomeLink indicator light will flash slowly and then rapidly once the HomeLink function button recognizes and accepts the hand-held transmitter's radio frequency signal.

After programming the HomeLink button, begin programming your garage door opener motor.

Note: You may need a ladder to reach the unit and you may need to remove the cover or lamp lens on your garage door opener.



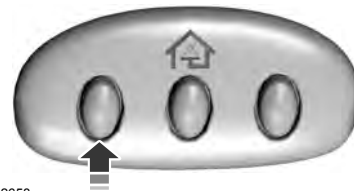
E142659

To program additional buttons, repeat Steps 1 – 4.

For questions or comments, please contact HomeLink at www.homelink.com or 1-800-355-3515.

Programming your garage door opener motor

- Press the learn button on the garage door opener motor and then you have 30 seconds to complete the next two steps.
- Return to your vehicle.

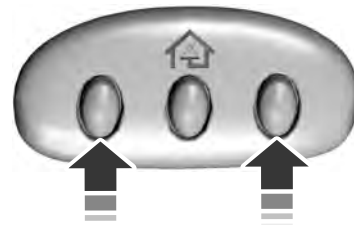


E142658

- Press and hold the function button you want to program for 2 seconds, then release. Repeat this step. Depending on your brand of garage door opener, you may need to repeat this sequence a third time.

Erasing the Function Button Codes

Note: You cannot erase individual buttons.



E142660

Universal Garage Door Opener

1. Press and hold the outer two function buttons simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the indicator lights above the buttons flash rapidly.
2. When the indicator lights flash, release the buttons. The codes for all buttons are erased.

Reprogramming a Single Button

To program a device to a previously trained button, follow these steps:

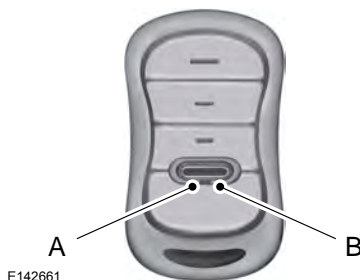
1. Press and hold the desired button. Do NOT release the button.
2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. Without releasing the button, follow Step 1 in the Programming section.

For questions or comments, contact HomeLink at www.homelink.com or 1-800-355-3515.

Programming to a Genie Intellicode 2 Garage Door Opener

Note: The Genie Intellicode 2 transmitter must already be programmed to operate with the garage door opener.

Note: To program HomeLink to the transmitter you must first put the transmitter into programming mode.



- A. Red indicator light
- B. Green indicator light

1. Press and hold one of the buttons on the hand-held transmitter for 10 seconds. The indicator light will change from green to red and green.
2. Press the same button twice to confirm the change to programming mode. If done properly the indicator light will appear red.
3. Hold the transmitter within 1–3 inches (2–8 centimeters) of the button on the visor you want to program.

4. Press and hold both the programmed Genie button on the hand-held transmitter and the button you want to program. The indicator light on the visor will flash rapidly when the programming is successful.

Note: The Genie transmitter will transmit for up to 30 seconds. If HomeLink does not program within 30 seconds the Genie transmitter will need to be pressed again. If the Genie transmitter indicator light displays green and red, release the button until the indicator light turns off before pressing the button again.

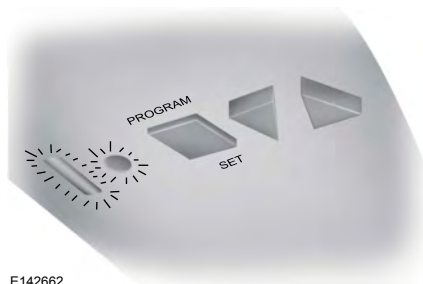
Once HomeLink has been programmed successfully, the Genie transmitter must be changed out of program mode. To do this:

1. Press and hold the previously programmed Genie button on the hand-held transmitter for 10 seconds. The indicator light will change from red to red and green.
2. Press the same button twice to confirm the change. If done correctly the indicator light will turn green.

Programming HomeLink to the Genie Intellicode Garage Door Opener Motor

Note: You may need a ladder to access the garage door opener motor.

Universal Garage Door Opener



E142662

1. Press and hold the program button on the garage door opener motor until both blue indicator lights turn on.
2. Release the program button. Only the smaller round indicator light should be on.
3. Press and release the program button. The larger purple indicator light will flash.

Note: The next two steps must be completed in 30 seconds.

4. Press and release the Genie Intellicode 2 hand-held transmitter's previously programmed button. Both indicator lights on the garage door opener motor unit should now flash purple.

5. Press and hold the previously programmed button on the visor for 2 seconds. Repeat this step up to 3 times until the garage door moves.

Programming is now complete.

Clearing a HomeLink Device

To erase programming from the three HomeLink buttons press and hold the two outer HomeLink buttons until the indicator light begins to flash. The indicator light will begin flashing in 10 to 20 seconds, at which time both buttons should be released. Programming has now been erased, and the indicator light should blink slowly to indicate the device is in train mode when any of the three HomeLink buttons are pressed.

FCC and RSS-210 Industry Canada Compliance

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications to your device not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance can void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Auxiliary Power Points

12 Volt DC Power Point

WARNING



Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket (if equipped). Improper use of the lighter can cause damage not covered by your warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Note: If used when the vehicle is not running, the battery will discharge. There may be insufficient power to restart your vehicle.

Note: Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This will damage the outlet and blow the fuse.

Note: Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug.

Note: Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.

Note: Do not use the power point for operating a cigar lighter element.

Note: Improper use of the power point can cause damage not covered by your warranty.

Note: Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.

Run the vehicle for full capacity use of the power point. To prevent the battery from discharging accidentally:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

Locations

Power points may be in the following locations:

- in the front of the center console
- inside the center console storage bin
- on the rear of the center console.

110 Volt AC Power Point (If Equipped)

WARNING



Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 110 volt AC power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design. Doing so may cause the power point to overload due to powering multiple devices that can reach beyond the 150 watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

Note: Keep the vehicle running to use the power point.



E143941

You can use the power point for powering electrical devices that require up to 150 watts. It is on the rear of the center console.

When the indicator light, located on the power point, is:

- on — power point is ready to supply power.
- off — power point power supply is off; ignition is not on.
- flashing — power point is in fault mode.

Auxiliary Power Points

The power point temporarily turns off power if it exceeds the 150 watt limit. It can also switch to a fault mode if it detects overloading, overheating, or shorting conditions. For overloading and shorting conditions, unplug your device and switch the ignition off then on. For an overheating condition, let the system cool off first. Switch the ignition off then on.

Do not use the power point for certain electric devices, including:

- Cathode ray tube type televisions
- Motor loads, for example vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools, or compressor-driven refrigerators
- Measuring devices which process precise data, for example medical equipment or measuring equipment
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply, for example microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch sensor lamps



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - R O C E S S

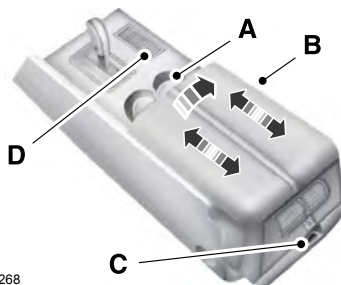
124

Storage Compartments

CENTER CONSOLE

Stow items in the cupholder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or collisions, including hot drinks which may spill.

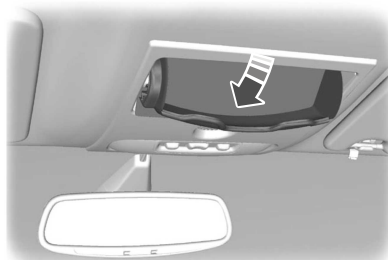
Available console features include:



E173268

- A Cupholders
- B Sliding driver and passenger arm rests, utility compartment with audio input jack, USB port and power point
- C Rear power point, heated seat switches and air vents
- D Power point door and a power rear sunshade control

OVERHEAD CONSOLE



E75193

Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.





Information Provided by:
DEALER
E - P - R - E - S - S


Starting and Stopping the Engine


GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS

 Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

 Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

 Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.

 If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 miles (8 kilometers) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

KEYLESS STARTING

Note: The keyless starting system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cellular phones.

Note: A valid key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

Note: When locking your vehicle, any remote controls left inside the vehicle may become disabled. A message may appear in the information display indicating that there is no key detected if you try to start the engine. Press the unlock button on the remote control to enable it, and then start the engine.

Ignition Modes



E142555

Off: Turns the ignition off.

- Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once when the ignition is in the on mode, or when the engine is running but the vehicle is not moving.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

On: All electrical circuits are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

- Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once.

Start: Starts the engine.

- Press the brake pedal, and then press the button for any length of time. An indicator light on the button illuminates when then ignition is on and when the engine starts.

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

When you start the engine, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: *You can crank the engine for a total of 60 seconds (without the engine starting) before the starting system temporarily disables. The 60 seconds does not have to be all at once. For example, if you crank the engine three times for 20 seconds each time, without the engine starting, you reached the 60-second time limit. A message appears in the information display alerting you that you exceeded the cranking time. You cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes. After 15 minutes, you are limited to a 15-second engine cranking time. You need to wait 60 minutes before you can crank the engine for 60 seconds again.*

Before starting the engine, check the following:

- Make sure all occupants have fastened their safety belts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Put the transmission in park (P).

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Press the button.

The system does not function if:

- The key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start the engine, do the following:



E173591

1. With the buttons facing the rear of the vehicle and the key ring up, place the key into the backup slot.
2. With the key in this position, press the brake pedal, then the button to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart the engine within 20 seconds of switching it off, even if a valid key is not present.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Within 20 seconds of switching the engine off, press the brake pedal and press the button. After 20 seconds have expired, you can no longer restart the engine without the key present inside your vehicle.

Once the engine has started, it remains running until you press the button, even if the system does not detect a valid key. If you open and close a door while the engine is running, the system searches for a valid key. You cannot restart the engine if the system does not detect a valid key within 20 seconds.

Failure to Start

If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow this procedure:

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Start the engine.

Automatic Engine Shutdown

If your vehicle is equipped with a keyless ignition, it has a feature that automatically shuts down the engine if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before the engine shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, the engine shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that the engine has shut down in order to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

Automatic Engine Shutdown Override

Note: *You cannot permanently switch off the automatic engine shutdown feature. When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.*

You can stop the engine shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- You can reset the timer by interacting with your vehicle (such as pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal).
- You can temporarily switch off the shutdown feature any time the ignition is on (for the current ignition cycle only). Use the information display to do so. See **Information Displays** (page 88).
- During the countdown before engine shutdown, you are prompted to press OK or RESET (depending on your type of information display) to temporarily switch the feature off (for the current ignition cycle only).

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Put the transmission in park (P).
2. Press the button once.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Note: *This switches off the ignition, all electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators.*

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

WARNING



Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not lock, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off, some electrical circuits, including air bags, warning lamps and indicators may also be off. If the ignition was turned off accidentally, you can shift into neutral (N) and re-start the engine.

1. Press and hold the button for one second, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Move the transmission selector lever to neutral (N) and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop. When your vehicle has stopped, move the transmission selector lever to park (P) and switch the ignition off.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes

WARNING



If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes. Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 1 inch (2.5 centimeters).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (If Equipped)

WARNINGS



Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.

WARNINGS



Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

Note: *The heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0°F (-18°C).*

The heater acts as a starting aid by warming the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to respond quickly. The equipment includes a heater element (installed in the engine block) and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 120-volt AC electrical source.

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use a 16-gauge outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). This extension cord must be suitable for use outdoors, in cold temperatures, and be clearly marked Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.



Information Provided by:

DEALER

129

Starting and Stopping the Engine

- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Make sure your vehicle is parked in a clean area, clear of combustibles.
- Make sure the heater, heater cord and extension cord are firmly connected.
- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.
- Make sure the system is unplugged and properly stowed before starting and driving your vehicle. Make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Make sure the heater system is checked for proper operation before winter.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

Using the Engine Block Heater

Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.



Information Provided by:

130 DEALER
ELECTRONICS

Fuel and Refueling

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

WARNINGS



Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door (Easy Fuel capless fuel system), do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.



Fuel ethanol and gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

WARNINGS



When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.

- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking "Antabuse" or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL QUALITY

Your warranty will not cover any vehicle damage, loss of vehicle performance or repairs to your vehicle, caused by the use of fuel not recommended.

Choosing the Right Fuel

Use only unleaded gasoline or unleaded gasoline blended with a maximum of 15% ethanol in your gasoline vehicle. If your vehicle is a flex fuel vehicle (FFV), it will have a yellow bezel placed over the fuel fill inlet.

Do not use:

- Fuel containing more than 15% ethanol or E-85 fuel.
- Fuel with methanol.
- Fuels containing metallic based additives, including manganese-based compounds.
- Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT).
- Leaded fuel (the use of leaded fuel is prohibited by law).

Note: Use of any fuel other than recommended fuel can cause powertrain damage, impair the emission control system or cause loss of vehicle performance. Your warranty will not cover any vehicle damage caused by the use of fuel not recommended.

Octane Recommendations



E161513

Do not be concerned if your engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if it knocks heavily under most driving conditions while you are using fuel with the recommended octane rating, see your authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

3.7L V6 Engine

Regular unleaded gasoline with a pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87 is recommended. Some stations offer fuels posted as regular with an octane rating below 87, particularly in high altitude areas. Fuels with octane levels below 87 are not recommended.

3.5L V6 EcoBoost Engine

Regular unleaded gasoline with a pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87 is recommended. Some fuel stations offer fuels posted as regular with an octane rating below 87, particularly in high altitude areas. Do not use fuels that have a posted rating below 87 octane.

Premium fuel will provide improved performance and is recommended for severe duty usage such as trailer tow.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Avoid running out of fuel because this situation may have an adverse effect on powertrain components.

If you have run out of fuel:

Fuel and Refueling

- You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. On restarting, cranking time will take a few seconds longer than normal. With keyless ignition, just start the engine. Crank time will be longer than usual.
- Normally, adding 1 gal (3.8 L) of fuel is enough to restart the engine. If your vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep grade, more than 1 gal (3.8 L) may be required.
- The service engine soon indicator may turn on. For more information on the service engine soon indicator, See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 84).

Refilling With a Portable Fuel Container

WARNINGS



Do not insert the nozzle of portable fuel containers or aftermarket funnels into the capless fuel system. This could damage the fuel system and its seal, and may cause fuel to run onto the ground instead of filling the tank, which could result in serious personal injury.

WARNINGS

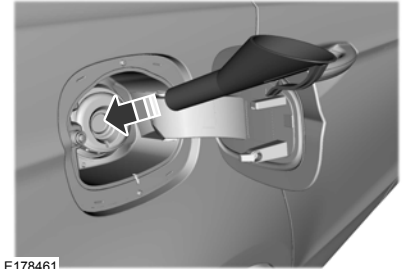


Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

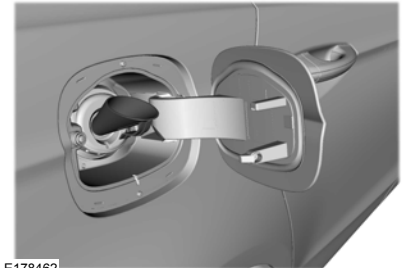
Note: Do not use aftermarket funnels, they will not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it. The included fuel funnel is specially designed to work safely with your vehicle.

When filling your vehicle's fuel tank from a portable fuel container, use the funnel included with your vehicle.

1. Locate the portable funnel that comes with your vehicle. The funnel is located in the spare tire compartment.



2. Slowly insert the funnel into the capless fuel system.



3. Fill your vehicle with fuel from the portable fuel container.



Information Provided by:









DEALER

Fuel and Refueling

- When done, clean the funnel or properly dispose of it. You can purchase extra funnels from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

REFUELING

WARNINGS


-  Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.
-  Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.
-  Switch off your engine when you are refueling.
-  Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling your vehicle.
-  Keep sparks, flames and smoking materials away from fuel.
-  Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle. This is against the law in some places.
-  Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.
-  Do not use personal electronic devices while refueling.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Place approved fuel container on the ground.
- Do not fill a fuel container while it is in your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- Do not use a device that would hold the fuel pump handle in the fill position.

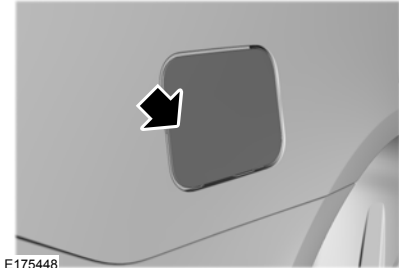
Easy Fuel™ Capless Fuel System

WARNING

-  The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

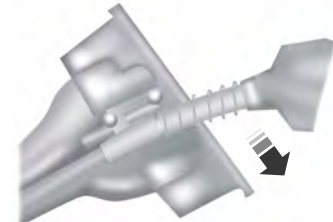
When fueling your vehicle:

- Put the vehicle in position **P** and switch the ignition off.



E175448

- Press the center-rear edge of the fuel filler door and release to open.

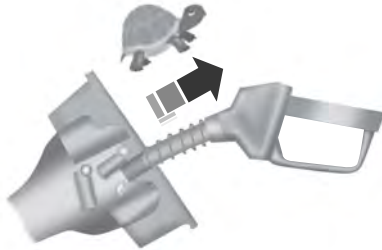


E156032

Note: Hold the handle of the fuel filler nozzle higher while you insert the nozzle for easier access.

Fuel and Refueling

3. Slowly insert the fuel filler nozzle fully into the fuel system to open both doors. Leave the nozzle fully inserted until you have stopped pumping fuel.



E154765

Note: Allow about five to ten seconds after pumping fuel before removing the fuel filler nozzle. This allows residual fuel to drain back into the fuel tank and not spill onto the vehicle.

4. After you have stopped pumping fuel, slowly remove the fuel filler nozzle.

Note: A fuel spillage concern may occur if overfilling the fuel tank. Do not overfill the tank to the point that the fuel is able to bypass the fuel filler nozzle. The overfilled fuel may run down the drain located below and in front of the fuel filler door.

5. To close the fuel filler door, press the center-rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release. The fuel door will latch closed.

If the fuel fill inlet did not close properly, a **Check Fuel Fill Inlet** message may appear on the instrument cluster.

At the next opportunity, do the following:

1. Safely pull off the road.
2. Put the vehicle in position **P** and switch the ignition off.
3. Open the fuel filler door and remove any visible debris from the fuel fill opening.
4. Insert the fuel fill nozzle, or the fuel fill funnel provided with the vehicle, several times to allow the inlet to close properly. This will dislodge any debris preventing the inlet from sealing.

If this action corrects the problem, the message may not reset immediately. It may take several driving cycles for the message to turn off. A driving cycle consists of an engine start-up (after four or more hours with the engine off) followed by city or highway driving. Continuing to drive with the message on may cause the service engine soon lamp to turn on as well.

FUEL CONSUMPTION

Note: The amount of usable fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity of the fuel tank due to the empty reserve still present in the tank.

Empty reserve is the amount of fuel remaining in the tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty. Do not rely on this fuel for driving. The usable capacity of the fuel tank is the amount of fuel that can be put into the tank after the gauge indicates empty. The advertised capacity is the total fuel tank size – it is the combined usable capacity plus the empty reserve.

Filling the Tank

For consistent results when filling the fuel tank:

- Turn the ignition off before fueling; an inaccurate reading results if the engine is left running.
- Use the same fill rate (low-medium-high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than two automatic click-offs when filling.

Fuel and Refueling

Results are most accurate when the filling method is consistent.

Calculating Fuel Economy

Do not measure fuel economy during the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers) of driving (this is your engine's break-in period); a more accurate measurement is obtained after 2000 miles - 3000 miles (3200 kilometers - 4800 kilometers). Also, fuel expense, frequency of fill ups or fuel gauge readings are not accurate ways to measure fuel economy.

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading.
2. Each time you fill the tank, record the amount of fuel added.
3. After at least three to five tank fill ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.
5. Calculate fuel economy by dividing miles traveled by gallons used (For Metric: Multiply liters used by 100, then divide by kilometers traveled).

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This provides an accurate estimate of the vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, lower temperatures mean lower fuel economy.

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

WARNINGS



Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.



Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle is equipped with various emission control components and a catalytic converter that will enable your vehicle to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Do not turn off the ignition while your vehicle is moving, especially at high speeds.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

The scheduled maintenance items listed in scheduled maintenance information are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If you use parts other than Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized parts for maintenance replacements, or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be the equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

Fuel and Refueling

Illumination of the service engine soon indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement

Please consult your warranty information for complete details.

On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle is equipped with an on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II) that monitors the engine's emission control system. This system protects the environment by ensuring that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists your authorized dealer in properly servicing your vehicle.



When the service engine soon indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon indicator to illuminate.

Examples of temporary malfunctions are:

- the vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly
- poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly
- the fuel fill inlet may not have been properly closed See **Refueling** (page 134).
- driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

You can correct these temporary malfunctions by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly closing the fuel fill inlet or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon indicator should stay off the next time you start the engine. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city/highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the service engine soon indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness, and lead to more costly repairs.

Fuel and Refueling

Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) Testing

Some state/provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.



If the service engine soon indicator is on or the bulb does not work, you may need to have the vehicle serviced. See On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II).

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, your vehicle is not ready for I/M testing.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without

cranking the engine. If the service engine soon indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon indicator stays on solid, it means that the vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

The OBD-II system monitors the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days. If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, you may need to perform the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving:

Drive on an expressway or highway for a steady 15 minutes, followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.

Allow the vehicle to sit for at least eight hours without starting the engine. Then, start the engine and complete the above driving cycle. The engine must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the engine until the above driving cycle is complete. If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, you will have to repeat the above driving cycle.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
138

Transmission

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WARNINGS



Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in Park (P). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.



Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than three seconds will limit engine rpm, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Understanding the Positions of Your Automatic Transmission

Putting your vehicle in gear:

1. Fully press down the brake pedal.
2. Press and hold the button on the front of the gearshift lever.
3. Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear.
4. Release the button and your transmission will remain in the selected gear.



E142628

Park (P)

This position locks the transmission and prevents the front wheels from turning. Come to a complete stop before putting your vehicle into and out of Park (P)

Reverse (R)

With the gearshift lever in Reverse (R), your vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of Reverse (R).

Neutral (N)

With the gearshift lever in Neutral (N), you can start your vehicle and it is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

Drive (D)

The normal driving position for the best fuel economy. Transmission operates in gears one through six.

Sport (S)

Moving the gearshift lever to Sport (S):

- Provides additional grade (engine) braking and extends lower gear operation to enhance performance for uphill climbs, hilly terrain or mountainous areas. This will increase engine RPM during engine braking.
- Provides additional lower gear operation through the automatic transmission shift strategy.
- Gears are selected more quickly and at higher engine speeds.

SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission (If Equipped)

Your SelectShift Automatic transmission gives you the ability to change gears manually.

Transmission

With your vehicle in Drive (D), the paddle shifters provide temporary manual control. They allow you the ability to shift gears quickly, without taking your hands off the steering wheel.

You can achieve extensive manual control by moving the gearshift lever to the Sport (S) position.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (–) to downshift.



The system determines when temporary manual control is no longer in use and returns to automatic control.

Upshift to the recommended shift speeds according to the following chart:

Upshifts when accelerating (recommended for best fuel economy)	
Shift from:	
1 - 2	15 mph (24 km/h)
2 - 3	25 mph (40 km/h)
3 - 4	40 mph (64 km/h)
4 - 5	45 mph (72 km/h)
5 - 6	50 mph (80 km/h)

The instrument cluster will display your currently selected gear.


The transmission will automatically upshift if your engine speed is too high or downshift if your engine speed is too low.


Note: The system will stay in manual control until you move the gearshift lever to another position. For example, Drive (D).


Note: Engine damage may occur if excessive engine revving is held without shifting.

Brake-Shift Interlock

WARNINGS

 Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.

 When doing this procedure, you will be taking the vehicle out of park which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully set the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheel chocks if appropriate.

 If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

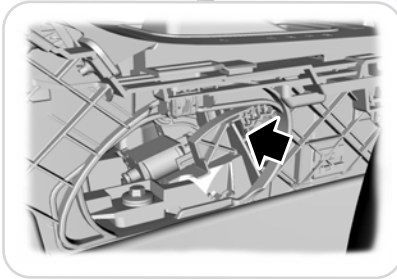
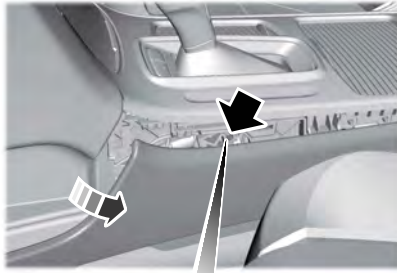
Note: See an authorized dealer as soon as possible if this procedure is used.

Note: For some markets this feature will be disabled.

Use the brake shift interlock lever to move the gearshift lever from the park position in the event of an electrical malfunction or if your vehicle has a dead battery.

Apply the parking brake and turn the ignition off before performing this procedure.

Transmission



E173230

1. Remove the side panel on the left side of the gearshift lever.
2. Locate the brake shift interlock lever on the left side of the gearshift assembly.

3. Apply the brake pedal. Using a screwdriver (or similar tool), press down and hold the brake shift interlock lever while pulling the gearshift lever out of Park (P) and into Neutral (N).
4. Install the side panel in reverse order.
5. Apply brake pedal, start your vehicle, and release the parking brake.

Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning

This feature is designed to increase durability and provide consistent shift feel over the life of the vehicle. A new vehicle or transmission may have firm and/or soft shifts. This operation is considered normal and will not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation. Additionally, whenever the battery is disconnected or a new battery installed, the strategy must be relearned.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

Note: Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.

Note: Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

All-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

USING ALL-WHEEL DRIVE

All-wheel drive uses all four wheels to power the vehicle. This increases traction, enabling you to drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot. The AWD system is active all the time and requires no input from the operator.

Note: Your AWD vehicle is not for off-road use. The AWD feature gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities in which driving surfaces are relatively level, obstruction-free and otherwise similar to normal on-road driving conditions. Operating your vehicle under other than those conditions could subject the vehicle to excessive stress which might result in damage not covered under your warranty.

Note: When an AWD system fault is present, the warning Check AWD displays in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 94). An AWD system fault causes the AWD system to default to front-wheel drive only mode. If this warning displays, have your vehicle serviced at an authorized dealer.

Note: The AWD Off message displays in the information display if the AWD system has overheated. See **Information Messages** (page 94). This condition may occur if the vehicle operates in extreme conditions with excessive wheel slip, such as deep sand. To resume normal AWD function as soon as possible, stop the vehicle in a safe location and stop the engine for at least 10 minutes. After the engine restarts and the AWD system has adequately cooled, the AWD Off message turns off and normal AWD function returns. In the event you do not stop the engine, the AWD Off message turns off when the system cools and normal AWD function returns.

Do not use a spare tire of a different size other than the tire provided. The AWD system may disable automatically and enter front-wheel drive only mode to protect driveline components if you install the mini-spare tire. A warning in the information display indicates this condition. See **Information Messages** (page 94).

If there is an AWD Off message in the information display from using the spare tire, this indicator should turn off after reinstalling the repaired or replaced normal road tire and cycling the ignition off and on. Reinstall the

repaired or replaced road tire as soon as possible. Major dissimilar tire sizes between the front and rear axles could cause the AWD system to stop functioning and default to front-wheel drive or damage the AWD system.

Driving In Special Conditions With All-Wheel Drive (AWD)

AWD vehicles are equipped for driving on sand, snow, mud and rough roads and have operating characteristics that are somewhat different from conventional vehicles, both on and off the highway.

When driving at slow speeds in deep sand under high outside temperatures, use a low gear when possible. Lower gear operation maximizes the engine and transmission cooling capability. Under severe operating conditions, the A/C may cycle on and off to protect overheating of the engine.

Basic operating principles in special conditions

- Drive slower in strong crosswinds which can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.
- Use extreme care when driving on pavement made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice.

All-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

If Your Vehicle Goes Off the Edge of the Pavement

- If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement, slow down, but avoid severe brake application. Ease the vehicle back onto the pavement only after reducing your speed. Do not turn the steering wheel too sharply while returning to the road surface.
- It may be safer to stay on the apron or shoulder of the road and slow down gradually before returning to the pavement. You may lose control if you do not slow down or if you turn the steering wheel too sharply or abruptly.
- It often may be less risky to strike small objects, such as highway reflectors, with minor damage to your vehicle rather than attempt a sudden return to the pavement which could cause the vehicle to slide sideways out of control or rollover. Remember, your safety and the safety of others should be your primary concern.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck

WARNINGS



Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the transmission is in park (P). Turn the ignition to the lock position or turn the vehicle off using the start/stop button and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.



If you release the parking brake and the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.



Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Note: Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.

Note: Do not rock the vehicle for more than a few minutes or damage to the transmission and tires may occur or the engine may overheat.

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow you can rock it out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts, in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

If your vehicle is equipped with AdvanceTrac® with Roll Stability Control™, it may be beneficial to disengage the AdvanceTrac® with Roll Stability Control™ system while attempting to rock the vehicle.

Emergency Maneuvers

- In an unavoidable emergency situation where a sudden sharp turn must be made, remember to avoid "over-driving" your vehicle (i.e., turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency). Excessive steering results in less vehicle control, not more. Additionally, if changes in vehicle speed are necessary, use smooth variations of accelerator and/or brake pedal pressure to adjust vehicle speed. Avoid abrupt

All-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

steering, acceleration or braking which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and/or personal injury. Use all available road surface to return the vehicle to a safe direction of travel.

- In the event of an emergency stop, avoid skidding the tires and do not attempt any sharp steering wheel movements.
- If the vehicle goes from one type of surface to another (i.e., from concrete to gravel) the way the vehicle responds to a maneuver changes (steering, acceleration or braking). Again, avoid these abrupt inputs.

Sand

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Avoid reducing the tire pressures but shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid excessive wheel slip.

Do not drive your vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time. This could cause the AWD system to overheat and default to front-wheel drive. If this occurs AWD Off displays in the Information Display. To resume normal AWD function as soon as possible, stop the vehicle in a safe location

and stop the engine for at least 10 minutes. After the engine restarts and the AWD system has adequately cooled, the AWD Off message turns off and normal AWD function returns. In the event you do not stop the engine, the AWD Off message turns off when the system cools and normal AWD function returns.

When driving at slow speeds in deep sand under high outside temperatures, use a low gear when possible. Low gear operation maximizes the engine and transmission cooling capability. Under severe operating conditions, the A/C may cycle on and off to protect overheating of the engine.

Avoid excessive speed because vehicle momentum can work against you and cause the vehicle to become stuck to the point that assistance may be required from another vehicle. Remember, you may be able to back out the way you came if you proceed with caution.

Mud and Water

If you must drive through high water, drive slowly. Traction or brake capability may be limited.

When driving through water, determine the depth; avoid water higher than the bottom of the wheel rims (for cars) or the bottom of the hubs (for trucks) (if possible) and proceed slowly. If the ignition system gets wet, the vehicle may stall.



E142667

Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as effectively as dry brakes. Drying improves when you move your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.

All-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even AWD vehicles can lose traction in slick mud. As when you are driving over sand, apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning your wheels. If the vehicle does slide, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.

After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess mud stuck on tires and rotating driveshafts causes an imbalance that could damage drive components.

Note: Driving through deep water may damage the transmission.

If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, the axle lubricant and AWD PTU (Power Transfer Unit) lubricant should be checked and changed if necessary.



E143950

“Tread Lightly” is an educational program designed to increase public awareness of land-use regulations and responsibilities in our nation's wilderness areas. Ford Motor Company joins the U.S. Forest Service and the Bureau of Land Management in encouraging you to help preserve our national forest and other public and private lands by “treading lightly.”

Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain

Note: Avoid driving crosswise or turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possibly rolling over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you will use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse (R) over a hill without the aid of an observer.

Although natural obstacles may make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should always try to drive straight up or straight down.

When climbing a steep slope or hill, start in a lower gear rather than downshifting to a lower gear from a higher gear once the ascent has started. This reduces strain on the engine and the possibility of stalling.

If you do stall out, do not try to turn around because you might roll over. It is better to back down to a safe location.

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power can cause the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.



E143949

Descend a hill in the same gear you would use to climb up the hill to avoid excessive brake application and brake overheating. Do not descend in neutral (N); instead, disengage overdrive or manually shift to a lower gear. When descending a steep hill, avoid sudden hard braking as you could lose control. The front wheels have to be turning in order to steer the vehicle.

All-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, therefore apply the brakes steadily. Do not “pump” the brakes.

Driving on Snow and Ice

WARNING



If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of the vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.

Note: *Excessive tire slippage can cause transmission damage.*

AWD vehicles have advantages over 2WD vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle.

Should you start to slide while driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a full stop.

Avoid sudden braking as well. Although an AWD vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice, it does not stop any faster, because as in other vehicles, braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident as to road conditions.

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between you and other vehicles for stopping. Drive slower than usual and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, apply the brake steadily. Since your vehicle is equipped with a four wheel (ABS), do not “pump” the brakes. See **Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes** (page 147).

Maintenance and Modifications

The suspension and steering systems on your vehicle provide predictable performance whether loaded or empty and durable load carrying capability. For this reason, Ford Motor Company strongly recommends that you do not make modifications such as adding or removing parts (such as lowering kits or stabilizer bars) or by using replacement parts not equivalent to the original factory equipment.

Any modifications to a vehicle that raise the center of gravity can make it more likely the vehicle will rollover as a result of a loss of control. Ford Motor Company recommends you use caution with any vehicle equipped with a high load or device (such as ladder or luggage racks).

Failure to maintain your vehicle properly may void the warranty, increase your repair cost, reduce vehicle performance and operational capabilities and adversely affect driver and passenger safety. If the vehicle experiences off-highway use, check the vehicle chassis components more frequently.

Brakes

GENERAL INFORMATION

Note: Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have it checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning the Alloy Wheels** (page 261).



See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 84).

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move

the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you brake rapidly by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal, and can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.



This lamp momentarily illuminates when you turn the ignition on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the system may be disabled. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If the anti-lock brake system is disabled, normal braking is still effective.



If the brake warning lamp illuminates when you release the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

Note: When the system is operating, the brake pedal will pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.


The anti-lock braking system will not eliminate the risks when:


- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Brakes

PARKING BRAKE

WARNINGS

 If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, then driving your vehicle could result in reduced braking ability, increased stopping distances and potential loss of brakes. See your authorized dealer as soon as possible.


 Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the transmission is placed in park **(P)**. Failure to set the parking brake and engage park could result in vehicle roll-away, property damage or bodily injury. Turn the ignition to the lock position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.


To set the parking brake, press the parking brake pedal down to its fullest extent.


To release the parking brake, press the parking brake pedal down again.

HILL START ASSIST

WARNINGS

 The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake. Failure to leave your vehicle securely parked may lead to a crash or injury. See **Parking Brake** (page 148).

 You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 The system will turn off if a malfunction is apparent or if you rev the engine excessively. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, your vehicle remains stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The system releases the brakes automatically once the engine has developed sufficient drive to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

Note: *The system only functions when you bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Shift the gearshift lever to reverse (R) when facing downhill and first gear (1) when facing uphill.*

Note: *There is no warning light to indicate the system is either on or off.*

Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed.
2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system activates automatically.

Brakes

3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle remains on the slope without rolling away for about two to three seconds. This hold time automatically extends if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The system releases the brakes automatically.

Note: *When you remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the pedal again when the system is active, you will experience significantly reduced brake pedal travel. This is normal.*

Switching the System On and Off

When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on. You can switch the system on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 88). The system remains off until you switch the ignition off.

Note: *For vehicles with a manual transmission, the system can be switched on or off.*

Note: *For vehicles with an automatic transmission, the system cannot be switched off.*



Information Provided by:

DEALER
SERVICES

Traction Control

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

USING TRACTION CONTROL

Note: *If your vehicle is equipped with MyKey®, it is possible to prevent turning the traction control system off. See **MyKey™** (page 50).*

In certain situations for example, stuck in snow or mud, turning the traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin with full engine power. Depending on the type of system you have on your vehicle, you can either turn the system off using the information display or by pressing the button.

Switching the System Off Using the Information Display Controls (If

Equipped)

Your vehicle comes with this feature already enabled. If required, you can switch this feature off using the information display controls. See **Principle of Operation** (page 150).

Switching the System Off Using a Switch (If Equipped)

The button is located in the instrument panel.

Press the button. You will see a message in conjunction with an illuminated icon in the display. Press the button again to return the system to normal mode.

When you switch the traction control system off, stability control remains fully active.

System Indicator Lights and Messages

WARNING



If a failure has been detected within the AdvanceTrac system, the stability control light will illuminate steadily. Verify that the AdvanceTrac system was not manually disabled through the information display. If the stability control light still illuminates steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with AdvanceTrac disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



The stability control light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and flashes when a driving condition activates the stability system.



The stability control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on when you turn the traction control system off.

When you turn the traction control system off or on, a message appears in the information display showing system status.



Information Provided by:

150 DEALER

Stability Control

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS



Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of the vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the AdvanceTrac system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the AdvanceTrac system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the AdvanceTrac sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the AdvanceTrac system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

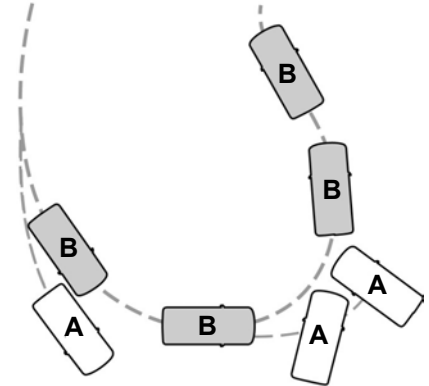


Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the AdvanceTrac system is an

WARNINGS

indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your AdvanceTrac system activates, SLOW DOWN.

The AdvanceTrac Control system helps you keep control of your vehicle when on a slippery surface. The electronic stability control portion of the system helps avoid skids and lateral slides. The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction. See **Using Traction Control** (page 150).



E72903

- A Vehicle without AdvanceTrac skidding off its intended route.
- B Vehicle with AdvanceTrac maintaining control on a slippery surface.

Stability Control

USING STABILITY CONTROL

AdvanceTrac®

The system automatically activates when you start your vehicle. The AdvanceTrac system cannot be completely turned off, but the electronic stability control system is disabled when the transmission selector lever is in position **R**. You can turn off the traction control portion of the system independently. See **Using Traction Control** (page 150).



Information Provided by:

152 **DEALER**
PROCESS

Parking Aids

PARKING AID (If Equipped)

WARNINGS



To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the system as contained in this section.

Sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving on a flat surface at parking speeds. Certain objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves, traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, and external motors and fans may also affect the function of the sensing system; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.



To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging the vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

WARNINGS



Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the system, may create false beeps.

Note: *Keep the sensors, located on the bumper or fascia, free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.*

Note: *If your vehicle is equipped with MyKey™, it is possible to prevent turning the sensing system off. See **MyKey™** (page 50).*

The sensing system warns the driver of obstacles within a certain range of the bumper area. The system turns on automatically whenever you switch the ignition on.

When receiving a detection warning, the radio volume reduces to a predetermined level. After the warning goes away, the radio volume returns to the previous level.

You can switch the system off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R). If your vehicle is equipped with a front sensing system, you can switch the system off using the parking aid switch. See **General Information** (page 88).

If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display and you cannot switch the system on through the pop-up message or parking aid switch. See **Information Messages** (page 94).

Rear Sensing System

The rear sensors are only active when the transmission is in reverse (R). As the vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the rate of the audible warning increases. When the obstacle is less than 12 in (30 cm) away, the warning sounds continuously. If the system detects a stationary or receding object farther than 12 in (30 cm) from the side of the vehicle, the tone sounds for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the warning sounds again.

Parking Aids



E130178

- A Coverage area of up to 6 feet (1.8 meters) from the rear bumper. There is decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper.

The system detects certain objects while the transmission is in reverse (R):

- Moving toward a stationary object at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- Not moving, but a moving object is approaching the rear of the vehicle at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- Moving at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h) and a moving object is approaching the rear of the vehicle at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h).

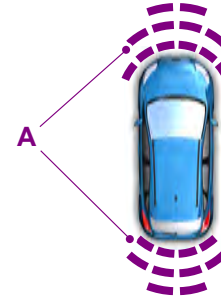
The system provides audio warnings only when your vehicle is moving or when your vehicle is stationary and the detected obstacle is less than 11.81 in (30 cm) away from the bumper.

The system provides obstacle distance indication through the center stack display (if equipped). The distance indication is present when the transmission is in reverse (R).

- As the distance to the obstacle decreases (obstacle becomes closer), the indicator blocks will illuminate and move towards the vehicle icon.
- If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks show greyed out.

Front Sensing System

The front sensors are active when the transmission is in any position other than park (P).



E130382

- A Coverage area of up to 27 inches (70 centimeters) from the front of the vehicle and about 6–14 inches (15–35 centimeters) to the side of the front end of the vehicle. Refer to the reverse sensing section for details on coverage area.

Parking Aids

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the front sensing system provides audio warnings when the vehicle is moving and the detected obstacle is moving towards the vehicle. Once the vehicle reaches a standstill condition, the audio warning stops after 2 seconds.

Additionally, the system provides obstacle distance indication through the center stack display (if equipped). The distance indication is present when the transmission is in reverse (R).

- As the distance to the obstacle decreases (obstacle becomes closer), the indicator blocks illuminate and move towards the vehicle icon.
- If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks show greyed out.

For automatic transmissions, if the gearshift is in neutral (N), the system provides obstacle distance indication through the center stack display (if equipped). The front sensing system provides visual warnings when the vehicle is moving at a speed below 5 mph (8 km/h) and an obstacle is located inside the front or rear sensing detection areas. Once the vehicle reaches a standstill condition, the visual warnings stop after 4 seconds.

If the gearshift is in drive (D) or any other forward gear (for example, low (L), sport (S), manual transmissions), the front sensing system provides audio warnings when the vehicle is moving and the system detects an obstacle inside the front sensing detection area. Once the vehicle reaches a standstill condition, the audio warning stops after 2 seconds.

Additionally, the system provides distance indication through the center stack display (if equipped). The distance indication is present if the vehicle is moving and an obstacle is located inside the front sensing detection area. Once the vehicle reaches a standstill condition, the visual warnings stop after 4 seconds, unless the detected obstacle is less than 12 in (30 cm) away from the bumper.

For specific information on the reverse sensing portion of the system, refer to that section.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST (If Equipped)

WARNING



Designed to be a supplementary park aid, this system may not work in all conditions. This system cannot replace the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is responsible for avoiding hazards and maintaining a safe distance and speed, even when the system is in use.

Note: *The driver is always responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.*

Note: *The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.*

Note: *The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.*

The system detects an available parallel parking space and automatically steers the vehicle into the space (hands-free) while you control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly instructs you to park the vehicle.

Parking Aids

The system may not function correctly if something passes between the front bumper and the parking space (a pedestrian or cyclist) or if the edge of the neighboring parked vehicle is high off the ground (for example, a bus, tow truck or flatbed truck).

Do not use the system if:

- You have attached a foreign object (bike rack or trailer) to the front or rear of your vehicle or attached close to the sensors.
- You have attached an overhanging object (surfboard) to the roof.

- The front bumper or side sensors are damaged or obstructed by a foreign object (front bumper cover).
- A mini-spare tire is in use.

Using Active Park Assist



Press the button located on the right side of the center stack.

The touchscreen displays a message and a corresponding graphic to indicate it is searching for a parking space. Use the direction indicator to indicate which side of your vehicle you want the system to search.

Note: If the direction indicator is not on, the system automatically searches on the vehicle's passenger side.



Information Provided by:

156 DEALER

Parking Aids

When the system finds a suitable space, the touchscreen displays a message and a chime sounds. Slow down, continue moving forward and stop when another chime sounds and a message displays on the touchscreen (at approximately position A), then follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: You must observe that the selected space remains clear of obstructions at all times in the maneuver.

Note: Active park assist may not detect vehicles with overhanging loads (a bus or a truck), street furniture and other items. You must make sure the selected space is suitable for parking.

Note: You should drive your vehicle as parallel to the other vehicles as possible while passing a parking space.

Note: The system always offers the last detected parking space (for example, if the vehicle detects multiple spaces while you are driving, it offers the last one).

Note: If driven above approximately 20 mph (35 km/h), the touch screen shows a message to alert you to reduce your vehicle speed.

Automatic Steering into Parking Space

Note: If vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the system switches off and you need to take full control of your vehicle.

When you shift the transmission into Reverse (R), with your hands off the wheel (and nothing obstructing its movement), your vehicle steers itself into the space. Indicated by tones, instructions to move your vehicle back and forth in the space, display on the touchscreen.



Parking Aids

When you think your vehicle has enough space in front and behind it, or you hear a solid tone from the parking aid (accompanied by a touchscreen display message and a chime), bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

When automatic steering is finished, the touch screen displays a message and a chime sounds, indicating that the active park assist process is done. The driver is responsible for checking the parking job and making any necessary corrections before putting the transmission in Park (P).

Deactivating the Park Assist Feature

Manually deactivate the system by:

- Pressing the active park assist button.
- Grabbing the steering wheel.
- Driving above approximately 20 mph (35 km/h) for 30 seconds during an active park search.
- Driving above 6 mph (10 km/h) during automatic steering.
- Turning off the traction control system.

Certain vehicle conditions can also deactivate the system, such as:

- Traction control has activated on a slippery or loose surface.
- There is an anti-lock brake system activation or failure.
- Something touches the steering wheel.

If a problem occurs with the system, a warning message is displayed, followed by a chime. Occasional system messages may occur in normal operation. For recurring or frequent system faults, contact an authorized dealer to have your vehicle serviced.

Troubleshooting the System

The system does not look for a space
The traction control system may be off
The transmission is in Reverse (R); your vehicle must be moving forward to detect a parking space

The system does not offer a particular space
Something may be contacting the front bumper or side sensors
There is not enough room on both sides of your vehicle in order to park
There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space

Parking Aids

The system does not offer a particular space

Your vehicle is farther than 6.5 ft (2.0 m) from the parking space

Your vehicle is closer than 16 in. (40 cm) from neighboring parked vehicles

The transmission is in Reverse (R); your vehicle must be moving forward to detect a parking space

Your vehicle is going faster than 20 mph (35 km/h)

The system does not position the vehicle where I want in the space

Your vehicle is rolling in the opposite direction of the transmission (rolling forward when Reverse [R] is selected)

An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from aligning your vehicle properly

Vehicles or objects bordering the space may not be positioned correctly

Your vehicle was pulled too far past the parking space. The system performs best when you drive the same distance past the parking space

The tires may not be installed or maintained correctly (not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes)

A repair or alteration has changed detection capabilities

A parked vehicle has a high attachment (salt sprayer, snowplow, moving truck bed, etc.)


The parking space length or position of parked objects changed after your vehicle passed


The temperature around your vehicle changes quickly (driving from a heated garage into the cold, or after leaving a car wash)


Parking Aids


REAR VIEW CAMERA (If Equipped)


WARNINGS

 The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

 Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

 Back up as slow as possible since higher speeds might limit your reaction time to stop the vehicle.

 Use caution when using the rear video camera and the trunk is ajar. If the trunk is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines (if enabled) have been removed when the trunk is ajar.

 Use caution when turning camera features on or off while in R (Reverse). Make sure the vehicle is not moving.

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle. The image will display in either the rear view mirror or the display in the center of the instrument panel.

During operation, lines will appear in the display that represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind your vehicle.



E192471

The camera is located on the trunk.

Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in Reverse (R).

The system uses three types of guides to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Active guidelines: Show the intended path of your vehicle when reversing.
- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline (if applicable): Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object (trailer).

Note: If the transmission is in Reverse (R) and the luggage compartment is ajar, no rear view camera features will display.

Note: If the image comes on while the transmission is not in Reverse (R), have the system inspected by an authorized dealer.

Note: When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing behind your vehicle. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear once you connect the trailer tow connector.

Parking Aids

The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if the reverse lamps are not operating.
- Mud, water or debris obstructs the camera's view. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The camera is misaligned due to damage to the rear of your vehicle.

To access any of the rear view camera system settings, make the following selections in the touch screen when the transmission is not in Reverse (R):

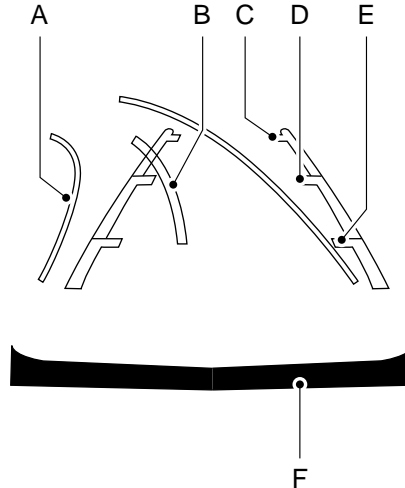
- Menu > Vehicle > Rear View Camera

After changing a system setting, the touch screen shows a preview of the selected features.

Guidelines and the Centerline

Note: Active guidelines and fixed guidelines are only available when the transmission is in Reverse (R).

Note: The centerline is only available if Active or Fixed guidelines are on.



E142436

- A Active guidelines (if equipped)
- B Centerline
- C Fixed guideline: Green zone
- D Fixed guideline: Yellow zone

- E Fixed guideline: Red zone
- F Rear bumper

If your vehicle is equipped with active guidelines they are only available with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If you change the steering wheel position while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on your steering wheel position. When your steering wheel position is straight, the active guidelines are not visible.

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

Enhanced Park Aids

Note: Enhanced park aids are only available when the transmission is in Reverse (R).

Parking Aids

Note: *The reverse sensing system is not effective at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.*

The system uses red, yellow and green highlights that appear on top of the video image when the reverse sensing system detects an object. The alert highlights the closest object detected. You can disable the reverse sensing alert if you have visual park aid alert enabled, you will still see the displayed highlighted areas.

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

Manual Zoom

WARNING



When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle is not shown. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Note: *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in Reverse (R).*

Note: *Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.*

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in Reverse (R). When you shift the transmission out of Reverse (R), the feature automatically turns off and you must enable it to use it used again.

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

Rear Camera Delay

When shifting the transmission out of Reverse (R) and into any gear other than Park (P), the camera image remains in the display until your vehicle speed reaches 6 mph (10 km/h or until you select a radio button.

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF. The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.



Information Provided by:

162 DEALER
E - N - G - I - N - E - E - R - S

Cruise Control

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 20 mph (30 km/h).

USING CRUISE CONTROL

WARNINGS

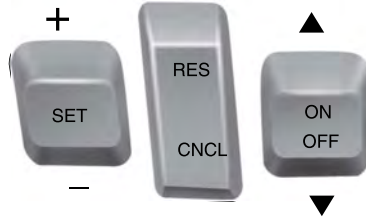


Do not use cruise control in heavy traffic, on winding roads or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes. Change down a gear to assist the system in maintaining the set speed. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

Note: Cruise control will disengage if the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below your set speed while driving uphill.



E173592

The cruise controls are located on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On

Press the **ON** control up and release.



The indicator will appear in the instrument cluster.

Setting a Speed

1. Accelerate to the desired speed.
2. Press the **SET** control upward and release.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator will change colors in the instrument cluster.

Changing the Set Speed

Note: If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed will not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, you will return to the speed that you previously set.

- Press **SET** up or down and hold to increase or decrease the set speed. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.
- Press **SET** up or down and release. The set speed will change in approximately 1 mph (2 km/h) increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press **SET** up and release.

Canceling the Set Speed

Press **CNCL** or tap the brake pedal. You will not erase the set speed.

Resuming the Set Speed

Press and release **RES**.

Switching Cruise Control Off


Note: You will erase the set speed if you switch the system off.


Cruise Control


Press the **OFF** control down and release or turn off the ignition.


USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (If Equipped)


WARNINGS


 Always pay close attention to changing road conditions, especially when using adaptive cruise control. Adaptive cruise control cannot replace attentive driving. Failing to follow any of the warnings below or failing to pay attention to the road may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

 Adaptive cruise control is not a crash warning or avoidance system.


 Adaptive cruise control will not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 6 mph (10 km/h).

 Adaptive cruise control will not detect pedestrians or objects in the roadway.

 Adaptive cruise control will not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

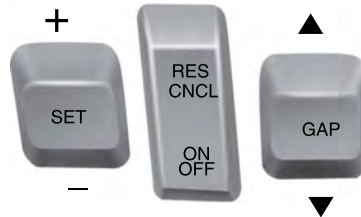
 Do not use the adaptive cruise control when entering or leaving a highway, in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, slippery or unpaved.

WARNINGS

 Do not use in poor visibility, specifically fog, rain, spray or snow.

Note: *It is your responsibility to stay alert, drive safely and be in control of the vehicle at all times.*

The system adjusts your speed to maintain a proper distance between you and the vehicle in front of you in the same lane. You can select from one of four gap settings.



E173593

The controls for using your cruise control are located on the steering wheel.

Setting Adaptive Cruise Control

Press and release **ON**.



The information display will show the grey indicator light, current gap setting, and **Set**. The system is set to standby mode.



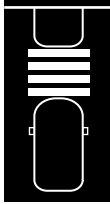
E173594

The current gap setting and **SET** will also display.

Setting a Speed

1. Accelerate to the desired speed.
2. Press **SET** upward and release. The vehicle speed will be stored in the memory.
3. The information display will show a green indicator light, current gap setting and desired set speed.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Cruise Control



E173595

5. A lead vehicle graphic will illuminate if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.

Following a Vehicle

WARNINGS



When following a vehicle in front of you, your vehicle will not decelerate automatically to a stop, nor will your vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Always apply the brakes when necessary. Failing to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

WARNINGS



Adaptive cruise control only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. You should always apply the brakes when necessary. Failing to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

Note: The brakes may emit a sound when modulated by the adaptive cruise control system.

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. The distance setting is adjustable.

The lead vehicle graphic will illuminate.

To help you pass a vehicle in front of you, the adaptive cruise control system may provide a small temporary acceleration when you switch on your left turn signal while following a lead car.

The vehicle will maintain a constant distance between the vehicle ahead until:

- the vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed
- the vehicle in front of you moves out of your lane or out of view
- the vehicle speed falls below 16 mph (26 km/h)
- a new gap distance is set.

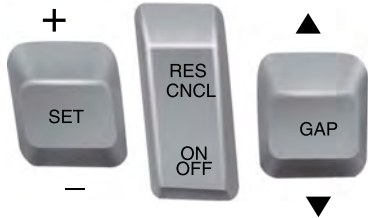
The vehicle will apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front. The maximum braking which the system can apply is limited. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

If the system predicts that its maximum braking level will not be sufficient, an audible warning will sound while the system continues to brake. This is accompanied by a heads-up display; a red warning bar illuminating on the windshield. You should take immediate action.

Setting the Gap Distance

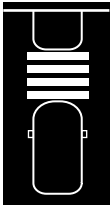
Note: It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

Cruise Control



E173593

You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you by pressing the gap control downward or upward.



E173595

The selected gap appears in the information display as shown by the bars in the graphic. Four gap distance settings are available.

Adaptive cruise control, distance between vehicle settings

Set speed mph (km/h)	Graphic display, bars indicated between vehicles	Time gap, seconds	Distance gap yd (m)	Dynamic behavior
62 (100)	1	1	31 (28)	Sport
62 (100)	2	1.4	43 (39)	Normal
62 (100)	3	1.8	55 (50)	Normal
62 (100)	4	2.2	67 (61)	Comfort

Each time you start the vehicle, the system will select the last chosen gap for the current driver.

Disengaging Adaptive Cruise Control

Press the brake pedal or press **CNCL**. The last set speed will appear in grey.

Cruise Control

Overriding Adaptive Cruise Control

WARNING



Whenever the driver is overriding the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, the system will not automatically apply the brakes to maintain separation from any vehicle ahead.

You can override the set speed and gap distance by pressing the accelerator pedal.



When you override the system, the green indicator light illuminates and the lead vehicle graphic does not show in the information

display.

The system will resume operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed will decrease to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

Changing the Set Speed

- Accelerate or brake to the desired speed, then press **SET** upward and release.
- Increase or decrease the speed by holding **SET** upward or downward SET until the desired set speed shows on the information display. The vehicle speed will gradually change to the selected speed.
- Increase or decrease the speed in increments of 1 mph (2km/h) by briefly pressing **SET** upward or downward.

The system may apply the brakes to slow your vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed will display continuously in the information display while the system is active.

Resuming the Set Speed

Note: *Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.*

Press and release **RES**. The vehicle will return to the previously set speed. The set speed will display continuously in the information display while the system is active.

Low Speed Automatic Cancellation

The system is not functional at vehicle speeds below 16 mph (26 km/h). An audible alarm will sound and the automatic braking releases if the vehicle drops below this speed.

Hilly Condition Usage

Note: *An audible alarm will sound and the system will shut down if it is applying brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool down. The system will function normally again when the brakes have cooled down.*

You should select a lower gear position when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep grades, for example in mountainous areas. The system needs additional engine braking in these situations to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent them from overheating.

Switching the System Off

Note: *The set speed memory erases when you switch off the system.*

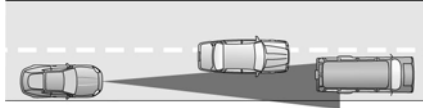
Press and release **OFF** or turn off the ignition.

Cruise Control

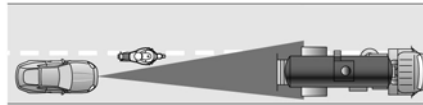
Detection Issues

The radar sensor has a limited field of vision. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle graphic will not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

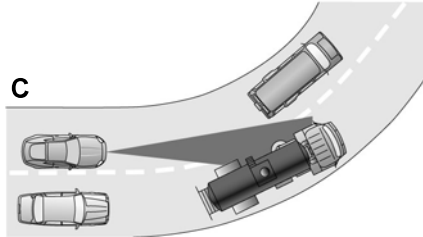
A



B



C



E71621

Detection issues can occur:

- A When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases the system may brake late or unexpectedly. The driver should stay alert and intervene when necessary.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. See an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.



Information Provided by:


DEALER
PROCESS


168

Cruise Control

Blocked Sensor

WARNINGS

 Do not use the system when towing a trailer with brake controls. Aftermarket trailer brakes will not function properly when you switch the system on because the brakes are electronically controlled. Failing to do so may result in loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

 Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failing to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.



E145632

A message displays if something obstructs the radar signals from the sensor. The sensor is located behind a fascia cover near the driver side of the lower grille. The system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and will not function when something obstructs the radar signals. The following table lists possible causes and actions for this message displaying.

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed in some way.	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.
The surface of the radar in the grille is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is free from obstruction.
Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
Swirling water, or snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
You are in a desert or remote area with no other vehicles and no roadside objects.	Wait a short time or switch to normal cruise control.

Cruise Control

Due to the nature of radar technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning and not be blocked. This can happen, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition will either self clear or clear after a key cycle.

Switching to Normal Cruise Control

WARNING



Normal cruise control will not brake due to slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

You can manually change from adaptive cruise control to normal cruise control through the information display.



The cruise control indicator light replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator light if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting will not display, the system will not automatically respond to lead vehicles and automatic braking will not activate. The system defaults to adaptive cruise control when you start the vehicle.



Information Provided by:

170 DEALER
E - P R O C E S S

Driving Aids

DRIVER ALERT (If Equipped)

WARNING



The driver alert system is designed to aid you. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

Note: The system will store the on or off setting in the information display menu through ignition cycles.

Note: If enabled in the menu, the system will be active at speeds above 40 mph (64 km/h). When below the activation speed, the information display will inform you that the system is unavailable.

Note: The system works as long as one lane marking can be detected by the camera.

Note: If the camera is blocked or if the windshield is damaged, the system may not function.

Note: The system may not be available in poor weather or other low visibility conditions.

The system automatically monitors your driving behavior using various inputs including the front camera sensor.

If the system detects that your driving alertness is reduced below a certain threshold, the system will alert you using a chime and a message in the information display.

Using Driver Alert

Switching the system on and off

You may switch the system on or off through the information display by selecting Settings then Driver Assist then Driver Alert in the menu. When activated, the system will monitor your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings, and other factors.

System Warnings

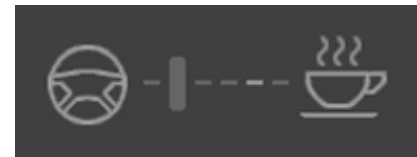
Note: The system will not issue warnings below approximately 40 mph (64 km/h).

The warning system is in two stages. At first the system issues a temporary warning that you need to take a rest. This message will only appear for a short time. If the system detects further reduction in driving alertness, another warning may be issued which will remain in the information display for a longer time. Press OK on the steering wheel control to clear the warning

System Display

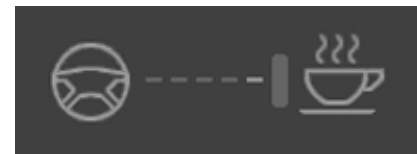
When active the system will run automatically in the background and only issue a warning if required. You can view the status at any time using the information display. See **General Information** (page 88).

The alertness level is shown by six steps in a colored bar.



E131358

The current assessment of your alertness is within a typical range.



E131359

Driving Aids

The current assessment of your alertness indicates that you should rest as soon as safely possible.

The status bar will travel from left to right as the calculated alertness level decreases. As the rest icon is approached the color turns from green to yellow to red. The yellow position indicates the first warning is active and the red position indicates the second warning is active.

Note: If you have recently received a warning; you should consider resting, even if the current assessment is with the typical range.

Note: If the camera sensor cannot track the road lane markings or if your vehicle speed drops below approximately 40 mph (64 km/h), the alertness level will change to grey for a short time and the information display will inform you that the system is unavailable.

Resetting the System

You can reset the system by either:

- Switching the ignition off and on.
- Stopping the vehicle and then opening and closing the driver's door.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM (If Equipped)

WARNING



The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

Note: The system works above 40 mph (64 km/h).

Note: The system works as long as the camera can detect one lane marking.

Note: The system may not function if the camera is blocked or there is damage to the windshield.

Note: When Aid mode is on and the system detects no steering activity for a short period, the system will alert you to put your hands on the steering wheel. The system may detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands off driving.

The system notifies you to stay in your lane through the steering system and the instrument cluster display when the front camera detects an unintentional drift out of your lane is likely to occur. The system automatically detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior rear view mirror.

Switching the System On and Off

Note: The system on or off setting is stored until it is manually changed, unless a MyKey® is detected. If the system detects a MyKey®, it defaults to on and the mode is set to alert.

Note: If a MyKey® is detected, pressing the button will not affect the on or off status of the system. You can only change the mode and intensity settings.



Press the button located on the center console to switch the system on or off.



Information Provided by:

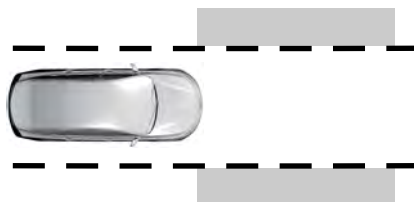
172 DEALER

Driving Aids

System Settings

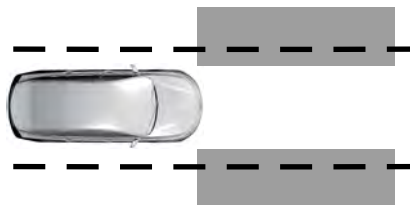
The system has one standard feature setting and one optional setting menu available. To view or adjust the settings, See **General Information** (page 88). The system stores the last known selection for each of these settings. You do not need to readjust your settings each time you turn on the system.

Mode: This setting allows you to select which of the system features you can enable.



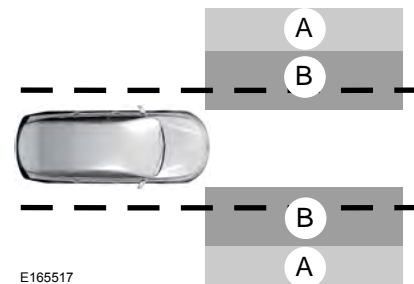
E165515

Alert only – Provides a steering wheel vibration when an unintended lane departure is detected.



E165516

Aid only – Provides a steering wheel vibration when the system detects an unintended lane departure.



E165517

- A Alert
- B Aid

Alert + Aid – Provides an assistance steering torque input toward the lane center. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the system provides a steering wheel vibration.

Note: The alert and aid diagrams illustrate general zone coverage. They do not provide exact zone parameters.

Intensity: This setting affects the intensity of the steering wheel vibration used for the alert and alert + aid modes. This setting does not affect the aid mode.



Information Provided by:
DEALER
E - P - R - E - S - S

Driving Aids

- Low
- Medium
- High

System Display



When you switch on the system, an overhead graphic of a vehicle with lane markings will display in the information display.



If you select aid mode when you switch on the system, arrows will be displayed with lane markings.

When you switch off the system, the lane marking graphics will not display.

Note: The overhead vehicle graphic may still be displayed if adaptive cruise control is enabled.

Troubleshooting

While the system is on, the color of the lane markings will change to indicate the system status.

Gray: Indicates that the system is temporarily unable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side(s). This may be because:

- Your vehicle is under the activation speed.
- Your turn indicator is active.
- Your vehicle is in a dynamic maneuver.
- The road has no or poor lane markings in the camera field-of-view.
- The camera is obscured or unable to detect the lane markings due to environmental conditions (significant sun angles, shadows, snow, heavy rain, fog), traffic conditions (following a large vehicle that is blocking or shadowing the lane), or vehicle conditions (poor headlamp illumination).

See **Troubleshooting** for additional information.

Green: Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention, on the indicated side(s).

Yellow: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping aid intervention.

Red: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

You can temporarily disable the system at any time by doing the following

- Quick braking.
- Fast acceleration.
- Using your direction indicator.
- Evasive steering maneuver.

Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?
Vehicle speed is outside the operational range of the feature
Sun is shining directly into the camera lens
Quick intentional lane change

Driving Aids

Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?
Staying too close to the lane marking
Driving at high speeds in curves
Previous feature activation happened within the last one second
Ambiguous lane markings (mainly in construction zones)
Rapid transition from light to dark or vice versa
Sudden offset in lane markings
ABS or AdvanceTrac activation
Camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield
Driving too close to the vehicle in front of you
Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings or vice versa
Standing water on the road
Faint lane markings (partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads)
Lane width too narrow or too wide
Camera not calibrated after a windshield replacement
Driving on tight roads or on uneven roads
Vehicle accessories such as snow plows



Information Provided by:
DEALER
EXPLORER

Driving Aids


Why does the vehicle not come back into the middle of the lane always, as expected, in the Aid or Aid + Alert mode?

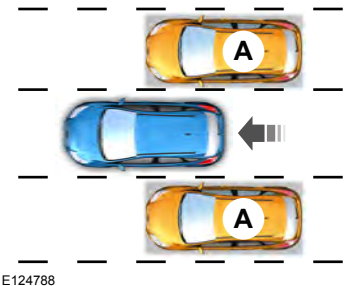
- High cross winds
- Large road crown
- Rough roads, grooves, shoulder drop-offs
- Heavy uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure
- If the tires have been exchanged (including snow tires), or the suspension has been modified
- Vehicle accessories such as snow plows or trailers

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Blind Spot Information System (BLIS™) with Cross Traffic Alert (if Equipped)

WARNING

 To help avoid injuries, NEVER use the Blind Spot Information System as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The Blind Spot Information System is not a replacement for careful driving.



The Blind Spot Information System aids you in detecting vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone (A). The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 10 ft (3 m) beyond the bumper. The system alerts you if certain vehicles enter the blind spot zone while driving.

Cross Traffic Alert warns you of vehicles approaching from the sides when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Driving Aids

Note: The Blind Spot Information System does not prevent contact with other vehicles or objects; nor detect parked vehicles, people, animals or infrastructure (fences, guardrails, trees). It only alerts you to vehicles in the blind zones.

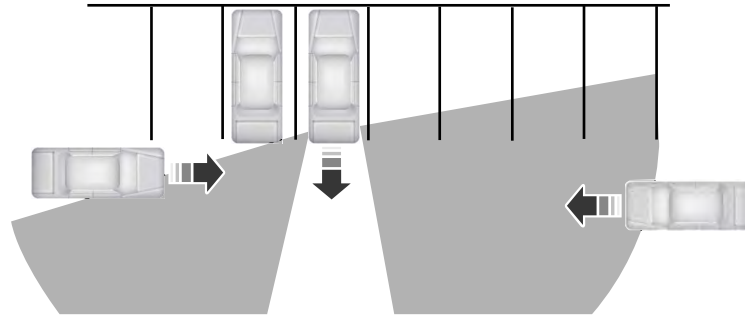
Note: When a vehicle passes quickly through the blind zone, typically fewer than two seconds, the system does not trigger.

Using the Systems

The Blind Spot Information System turns on when you start the engine and you drive your vehicle forward above 2 mph (3 km/h); it remains on while the transmission is in drive (D) and neutral (N). If shifted out of drive (D) or neutral (N), the system enters cross traffic alert mode. Once shifted back into drive (D), the Blind Spot Information System turns back on when you drive your vehicle above 2 mph (3 km/h).

Note: The Blind Spot Information System does not function in reverse (R) or park (P) or provide any additional warning when a direction indicator is on.

Cross Traffic Alert detects approaching vehicles from up to 46 ft (14 m) away though coverage decreases when the sensors are blocked. Reversing slowly helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.



E142440



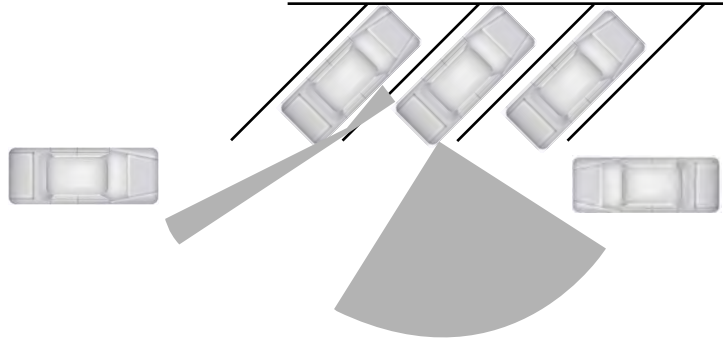
Information Provided by:

DEALER
SERVICES

Driving Aids

In this first example, the left sensor is only partially obstructed; zone coverage is nearly

maximized.



E142441

Zone coverage also decreases when parking at shallow angles. Here, the left sensor is mostly obstructed; zone coverage on that side is severely limited.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
PROCESS

178

Driving Aids

System Lights and Messages



E142442

The Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert systems illuminate a yellow alert indicator in the outside mirror on the side of your vehicle the approaching vehicle is coming from.

Note: The alert indicator dims when the system detects nighttime darkness.

Cross Traffic Alert also sounds a series of tones and a message appears in the information display indicating a vehicle is coming from the right or left. Cross Traffic Alert works with the reverse sensing system that sounds its own series of tones. See

Parking Aid (page 153).

System Sensors

WARNING



Just prior to the system recognizing a blocked condition and alerting the driver, the number of missed objects will increase. To help avoid injuries, NEVER use the Blind Spot Information System as a replacement for using the side and rear view mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The Blind Spot Information System is not a replacement for careful driving.

Note: *It is possible to get a blockage warning with no blockage present; this is rare and known as a false blockage warning. A false blocked condition either self-corrects or clears after a key cycle.*



E142443

The system uses radar sensors that are located behind the bumper fascia on each side of your vehicle. Do not allow mud, snow or bumper stickers to obstruct these areas, this can cause degraded system performance.

If the system detects a degraded performance condition, a message warning of a blocked sensor or low visibility appears in the information display along with a warning indicator. You can clear the information display warning but the warning indicator remains illuminated.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P - R - E - S - E - N - T

Driving Aids

When you remove a blockage, you can reset the system two ways:

- While driving, the system detects at least two objects.
- You cycle the ignition from on to off and then back on.

If the blockage is still present after the key cycle and driving in traffic, check again for a blockage.

Reasons for messages being displayed	
The radar surface is dirty or obstructed	Clean the fascia area in front of the radar or remove the obstruction.
The radar surface is not dirty or obstructed	Drive normally in traffic for a few minutes to allow the radar to detect passing vehicles so it can clear the blocked state.
Heavy rain-fall or snow-fall interferes with the radar signals	No action required. The system automatically resets to an unblocked state once the rainfall or snowfall rate decreases or stops. Do not use BLIS or Cross Traffic Alert in these conditions.

System Limitations

The Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert systems do have their limitations; situations such as severe weather conditions or debris build-up on the sensor area may limit vehicle detection.

The following are other situations that may limit the Blind Spot Information System:

- Certain maneuvering of vehicles entering and exiting the blind zone.
- Vehicles passing through the blind zone at very fast rates.
- When several vehicles forming a convoy pass through the blind zone.

The following are other situations that may limit the Cross Traffic Alert system:

- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects obstructing the sensors.
- Approaching vehicles passing at speeds greater than 15 mph (24 km/h).
- Driving in reverse faster than 3 mph (5 km/h).
- Backing out of an angled parking spot.

False Alerts

Note: *If your vehicle has a factory equipped tow bar and it is towing a trailer, the sensors detect the trailer and turn the Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert systems off to avoid false alerts. For non-factory equipped tow bars, you may want to switch the Blind Spot Information System off manually.*

There may be certain instances when there is a false alert by either the Blind Spot Information or the Cross Traffic Alert systems that illuminates the alert indicator with no vehicle in the coverage zone. Some amount of false alerts are normal; they are temporary and self-correct.

System Errors

If either system senses a problem with the left or right sensor, the Blind Spot Information System telltale illuminates and a message appears in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 94).

All other system faults only display with a message in the information display.

Driving Aids

Switching the Systems Off and On

You can temporarily switch off one or both systems in the information display. See **General Information** (page 88). When you switch off the Blind Spot Information System, you do not receive alerts and the information display shows a system off message. The yellow alert indicator in the outside mirror also flashes twice. The system turns back on whenever you switch the ignition on.

You can also have one or both systems switched off permanently at an authorized dealer. Once switched off, only an authorized dealer can switch the system back on.

STEERING

Electric Power Steering

WARNING



The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the ignition off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the ignition on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Your vehicle has an electric power steering system. There is no fluid reservoir. No maintenance is required.

If your vehicle loses electrical power while you are driving, electric power steering assistance is lost. The steering system still operates and you can steer your vehicle manually. Manually steering your vehicle requires more effort.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort required for you to steer your vehicle. This increased effort prevents overheating and permanent damage to the steering system. You do not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually. Typical steering and driving maneuvers allow the system to cool and return to normal operation.

Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- Correct tire pressures.
- Uneven tire wear.
- Loose or worn suspension components.
- Loose or worn steering components.
- Improper vehicle alignment.

Note: A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander or pull.

Driving Aids

Adaptive Learning

The electronic power steering system adaptive learning helps correct road irregularities and improves overall handling and steering feel. It communicates with the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems. Additionally, whenever the battery is disconnected or a new battery installed, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

COLLISION WARNING SYSTEM

(If Equipped)

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS



This system is designed to be a supplementary driving aid. It is not intended to replace the driver's attention, and judgment, or the need to apply the brakes. This system does NOT activate the brakes automatically. Failure to press the brake pedal to activate the brakes may result in a collision.

WARNINGS



The collision warning system with brake support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace driver judgment and the need to maintain distance and speed.

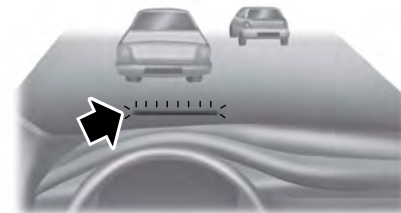
Note: *The system does not detect, warn or respond to potential collisions with vehicles to the rear or sides of the vehicle.*

Note: *The collision warning system is active at speeds above approximately 5 mph (8 km/h).*



E156130

This system is designed to alert the driver of certain collision risks. A radar detects if your vehicle is rapidly approaching another vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours.



E156131

If it is, a red warning light illuminates and an audible warning chime sounds.

The brake support system assists the driver in reducing the collision speed by charging the brakes. If the risk of collision further increases after the warning light illuminates, the brake support prepares the brake system for rapid braking. This may be apparent to the driver. The system does not automatically activate the brakes but, if the brake pedal is pressed, full force braking is applied even if the brake pedal is lightly pressed.



Information Provided by:

182
DEALER

Driving Aids

Using the Collision Warning System

WARNING



The collision warning system's brake support can only help reduce the speed at which a collision occurs if the driver applies the vehicle's brakes. The brake pedal must be pressed just like any typical braking situation.

The warning system sensitivity can be adjusted to one of three possible settings by using the information display control. See **General Information** (page 88).

Note: *If collision warnings are perceived as being too frequent or disturbing then the warning sensitivity can be reduced, though the manufacturer recommends using the highest sensitivity setting where possible. Setting lower sensitivity would lead to fewer and later system warnings. See **General Information** (page 88).*

Blocked Sensors



E145632

If a message regarding a blocked sensor appears in the information display, the radar signals from the sensor have been obstructed. The sensors are located behind a fascia cover near the driver side of the lower grille. When the sensors are obstructed, a vehicle ahead cannot be detected and the collision warning system does not function. The following table lists possible causes and actions for this message being displayed.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P - A - R - T - S

Driving Aids

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed in some way	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction
The surface of the radar in the grille is clean but the message remains in the display	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is no longer obstructed
Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals	The collision warning system is temporarily disabled. Collision warning should automatically reactivate a short time after the weather conditions improve
Swirling water, or snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals	The collision warning system is temporarily disabled. Collision warning should automatically reactivate a short time after the weather conditions improve

System Limitations

WARNING



The collision warning system's brake support can only help reduce the speed at which a collision occurs if the driver applies the vehicle's brakes. The brake pedal must be pressed just like any typical braking situation.

Due to the nature of radar technology, there may be certain instances where vehicles do not provide a collision warning. These include:

- Stationary vehicles or vehicles moving below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- Pedestrians or objects in the roadway.
- Oncoming vehicles in the same lane.
- Severe weather conditions (see blocked sensor section).
- Debris build-up on the grille near the headlamps (see blocked sensor section).
- Small distance to vehicle ahead.
- Steering wheel and pedal movements are large (very active driving style).

If the front end of the vehicle is hit or damaged, the radar sensing zone may be altered causing missed or false collision warnings. See your authorized dealer to have your collision warning radar checked for proper coverage and operation.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
PROCESS

Driving Aids

DRIVE CONTROL

LINCOLN DRIVE CONTROL

Lincoln Drive Control delivers the Lincoln driving experience through a suite of sophisticated electronic vehicle systems. These systems continuously monitor your driving inputs and the road conditions to optimize ride comfort, steering, handling, powertrain response and sound. You can preset your preferences for these systems within the information display. Lincoln Drive Control will respond to your preferences based on what gear position you select. This provides a single location to control multiple systems performance settings.

Lincoln Drive Control consists of the following systems:

- Continuously controlled damping dynamically adjusts the shock absorbers stiffness in real time to match the road surface and driver inputs. This system continuously monitors your vehicle's motion (roll, pitch, bounce), suspension position, load, speed, road conditions, and steering to adjust the suspension damping for optimal vehicle control.
- Electronically power-assisted steering adjusts steering effort and feel based on your vehicle speed and your inputs.
- Active noise control utilizes your vehicle electronics to enhance the acoustic experience.
- Electronic stability control and traction control maintain your vehicle control in adverse conditions or high performance driving.
- Electronic throttle control enhances the powertrain response to your inputs.
- Comfort – Provides a more relaxed driving experience, maximizing comfort. Your steering effort decreases and the suspension movement is more fluid. Comfort mode is ideal when you desire enhanced traveling comfort.
- Normal – Delivers a balanced combination of comfortable, controlled ride and confident handling. This mode provides an engaging drive experience and a direct connection to the road without sacrificing any of the composure demanded from a luxury vehicle.
- Sport – Provides a sportier driving experience. The suspension stiffens, with an emphasis on handling and control. The engine responds more directly to your inputs and takes on a more powerful tone. Sport mode is ideal for use during more spirited driving.

Note: Active noise control is only available with EcoBoost™ engines.

These systems have a range of modes which you can choose from in order to customize your ideal driving experience:

Using Lincoln Drive Control

You can configure which of the Drive Control modes are active when your vehicle is in Drive (D) or in Sport (S). The configuration remains active until modified from the main menu on the information display.

To change your vehicle's Drive Control settings from the main menu on the information display:

Driving Aids

1. Choose Settings.
2. Choose Vehicle.
3. Choose Drive Control.
4. Select the shift position you would like to configure, either **D** or **S**.
5. Choose from Comfort, Normal, or Sport modes as your preferred setting in D.
6. Choose from Normal or Sport modes as your preferred setting in S.

Settings in S:

- Handling in S - The suspension stiffens, with an emphasis on handling and control.
- Performance in S - The engine responds more directly to your inputs and takes on a more powerful tone.

Note: *Not all settings may be available.*

Note: *Lincoln Drive Control has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system to ensure proper operation. Certain types of system errors will gray out the mode selections within the information display, preventing you from changing states when the gear position is changed. Other types of errors will produce a temporary message that states Drive Control Malfunction. If either condition persists for multiple key cycles, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.*



Information Provided by:

186 DEALER
R O C E S S

Load Carrying

LOAD LIMIT

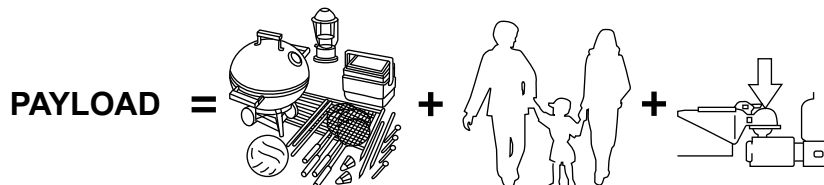
Vehicle Loading - with and without a Trailer

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle, trailer or both, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer.

Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label:

Base Curb Weight - is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

Vehicle Curb Weight - is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your authorized dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.



E143816

Payload - is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver

door (vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a Tire Label). Look for **“THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX kg OR XXX lb.”** for maximum payload. The payload listed on the



Information Provided by:
DEALER
- P R E S E N T S -

Load Carrying

Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If you install any aftermarket or authorized-dealer installed equipment on the vehicle, you must subtract the weight of the equipment from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new payload.

WARNING



The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.




Information Provided by:

DEALER
188

Load Carrying

Example only:



TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION


SEATING CAPACITY | TOTAL 5 | FRONT 2 | REAR 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed : **XXX kg or XXX lbs.**


TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
REAR	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
SPARE	T145/80D16 P225/60R17	420 KPA, 60 PSI 200 KPA, 29 PSI	

(XXX) XX-XXXX-XXXX

XXXXXXXXXXXX



E142516



TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION
RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT


SEATING CAPACITY | TOTAL 5 | FRONT 2 | REAR 3
NOMBRE DE PLACES | AVANT 2 | ARRIERE 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 492 kg or 1085 lbs.
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser 492 kg ou 1085 lb.

TIRE PNEU	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS A FROID	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT AVANT	P235/70R16	240 KPA, 35 PSI	VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
REAR ARRIERE	P235/70R16	240 KPA, 35 PSI	
SPARE DE SECOURS	T145/90R17	415 KPA, 60 PSI	

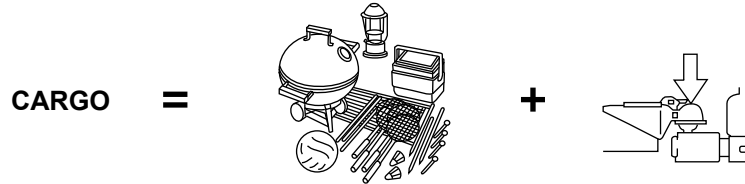
(XXX) XX-XXXX-XXXX

XXXXXXXXXXXX



E142517

Load Carrying



E143817

Cargo Weight - includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment. When towing, trailer tongue load or king pin weight is also part of cargo weight.

GAW (Gross Axle Weight) - is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating) - is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the

door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position. **The total load on each axle must never exceed its Gross Axle Weight Rating.**

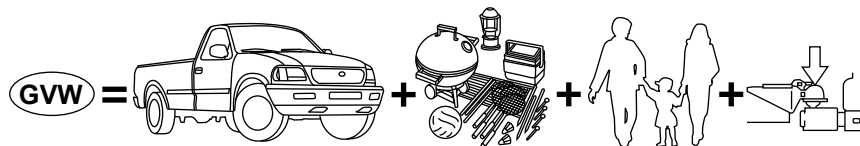
Note: For trailer towing information refer to the RV and Trailer Towing Guide available at an authorized dealer.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
190

Load Carrying



E143818

GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight) - is the Vehicle Curb Weight, plus cargo, plus passengers.

GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) - is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). It is shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The

label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position. **The Gross Vehicle Weight must never exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.**



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P - A - C - E - S

Load Carrying

Example only:

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.

DATE: XX/XX

GVWR: XXXXXLB/ XXXXXKG

FRONT GAWR: XXXXL

REAR GAWR: XXXXLB

XXXXKG

WITH

XXXXKG

WITH

XXXX/XXXXXX

TIRES

XXXX/XXXXXX

TIRES

XXXXXX

RIMS

XXXXXX

RIMS

AT XXX kPa/XX

PSI COLD

AT XXX kPa/XX

PSI COLD

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR
VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF
MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

XXXXX
XXXXX

TYPE: XXX

XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

EXT PNT: XX

RC: XX

DSO:

WB INT TR TP/PS R AXLE TR SPR XXXXX

XXX XX X XX X XX XXX

XXXXXXXXXXXX XXX XXX-XXXXXXX-XX




E142523



Information Provided by:

192 DEALER
PROCESS

Load Carrying

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.	
DATE: xx/xx	GVWR/PNBV: xxxxxLB/xxxxxKG
	FRONT GAWR/PNBE AV / REAR GAWR/PNBE AR xxxxx/xxxxxLB / xxxxxKG/xxxxxLB WITH/AVEC TIRES/PNEUS xxxxx/xxxxxx xxxxx/xxxxxx xxxxxxx RIMS/JANTES xxxxxxx
	
AT/A kPa/PSI/LPC xxx/xx	COLD/A FROID xxx/xx
VIN: xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx	/JUMEELES
TYPE: xxx/xxxx	COMPLIES: xxxxx/xxx - xxx
	
EXT PNT: U	KC: xx DSU:
WB INTIR TP/PS IR AXLE TIR SPR	xxxxxx
xxx xx x xx x xxxxx	xxxxxx
xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx xxxxx 700006-xxxxxxx-xxx	

E142524

WARNING



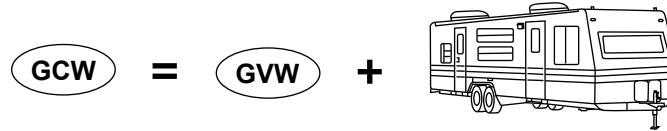
Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification Label vehicle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P - A - R - T - S

Load Carrying

$$\text{GCW} = \text{GVW} + \text{Trailer}$$


E143819

GCW (Gross Combined Weight)

- is the Gross Vehicle Weight plus the weight of the fully loaded trailer.

GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)

- is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer, including all cargo and passengers, that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, not at Gross Combined Weight Rating.) Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the Gross Combined Weight of the

towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of the towing vehicle. **The Gross Combined Weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.**

Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight

- is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. It assumes a vehicle with mandatory options, driver and front passenger weight (150 pounds [68 kilograms] each), no cargo weight (internal or external) and a tongue load of 10–15% (conventional

trailer) or king pin weight of 15–25% (fifth wheel trailer). Consult an authorized dealer (or the RV and Trailer Towing Guide available at an authorized dealer) for more detailed information.

Tongue Load or Fifth Wheel King Pin Weight

- refers to the amount of the weight that a trailer pushes down on a trailer hitch.

Load Carrying

Examples: For a 5000 pound (2268 kilogram) conventional trailer, multiply 5000 by 0.10 and 0.15 to obtain a proper tongue load range of 500 to 750 pounds (227 to 340 kilograms). For an 11500 pound (5216 kilogram) fifth wheel trailer, multiply by 0.15 and 0.25 to obtain a proper king pin load range of 1725 to 2875 pounds (782 to 1304 kilograms).

WARNINGS



Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label.



Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

WARNINGS



Exceeding any vehicle weight rating limitation could result in serious damage to the vehicle and/or personal injury.

Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lb.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.



Information Provided by:

DEALER

195

Load Carrying

The following gives you a few examples on how to calculate the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity:

*Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, four of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 pounds (99 kilograms) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 pounds (13.5 kilograms) each. The calculation would be: $1400 - (5 \times 220) - (5 \times 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150$ pounds. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be: $635 \text{ kilograms} - (5 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (5 \times 13.5 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5$ kilograms.

*Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past two years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for twelve 100-pound (45-kilogram) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 pounds (99 kilograms), the calculation would be: $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (12 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = -240$ pounds. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be: $635 \text{ kilograms} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (12 \times 45 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103$ kilograms. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 pounds (104 kilograms). If you remove three 100-pound


(45-kilogram) cement bags, then the load calculation would be: $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (9 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60$ pounds. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be: $635 \text{ kilograms} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (9 \times 45 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32$ kilograms.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the Front or the Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position.

Load Carrying

Special Loading Instructions for Owners of Pick-up Trucks and Utility-type Vehicles

WARNING

 Loaded vehicles may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, should be taken when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Your vehicle can haul more cargo and people than most passenger cars. Depending upon the type and placement of the load, hauling cargo and people may raise the center of gravity of the vehicle.




Information Provided by:


DEALER
E - P - R - C - E - S

Towing

TOWING A TRAILER

WARNINGS

 Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.

 Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of your vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Note: *There may be electrical items such as fuses or relays that can affect trailer towing operation. See **Fuses** (page 218).*

The load capacity of your vehicle is designated by weight not volume. You may not necessarily be able to use all available space when loading your vehicle or trailer.

Towing a trailer places extra load on the engine, transmission, axle, brakes, tires, and suspension. Inspect these components before, during and after towing.

Load Placement

To help minimize how trailer movement affects the vehicle when driving:

- Load the heaviest items closest to the trailer floor.
- Load the heaviest items in the center of the left and right side trailer tires.

- Load the heaviest items above the trailer axles or just slightly forward toward the trailer tongue. Do not allow the final trailer tongue weight to go above or below 10-15% of the loaded trailer weight.
- Select a tow bar with the correct rise or drop. When both the loaded vehicle and trailer are connected, the trailer frame should be level, or slightly angled down toward the vehicle, when viewed from the side.

When driving with a trailer or payload, a slight takeoff vibration or shudder may be present due to the increased payload weight. Additional information regarding proper trailer loading and setting your vehicle up for towing is located in the Load Carrying chapter. See **Load Limit** (page 187). You can also find the information in the **RV & Trailer Towing Guide**, available at an authorized dealer.

Towing

RECOMMENDED TOWING WEIGHTS

Note: Do not exceed the trailer weight for your vehicle configuration listed in the chart below.

Note: Be sure to take into consideration trailer frontal area. Do not exceed 12 feet² (1.11 meters²) trailer frontal area.

Note: For high altitude operation, reduce the gross combined weight by 2% per 1000 feet (300 meters) starting at the 1000 foot (300 meter) elevation point.

Note: Certain states require electric trailer brakes for trailers over a specified weight. Be sure to check state regulations for this specified weight. The maximum trailer weights listed may be limited to this specified weight, as the vehicle's electrical system may not include the wiring connector needed to use electric trailer brakes.

Your vehicle may tow a Class I trailer provided the maximum trailer weight is less than or equal to the maximum trailer weight listed for your vehicle configuration on the following chart. If your vehicle is equipped with 3.7L engine, it cannot tow a trailer.

Powertrain	Maximum trailer weight
3.7L TiVCT front-wheel drive	No trailer towing permitted
3.7L TiVCT all-wheel drive	No trailer towing permitted
3.5L GTDI all-wheel drive	1000 lb (454 kg)

Towing

ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

Follow these guidelines for safe towing:

- Do not tow a trailer until you drive your vehicle at least 1000 miles (1600 kilometers).
- Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.
- See the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.
- Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer. See your scheduled maintenance information.
- If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions the rental agency gives you.

You can find information on load specification terms found on the tire label and Safety Compliance label as well as instructions on calculating your vehicle's load in the Load Carrying chapter. See **Load Limit** (page 187).

Remember to account for the trailer tongue weight as part of your vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.

Hitches

Do not use a hitch that either clamps onto the bumper or attaches to the axle.

Distribute the trailer load so 10–15% of the total trailer weight is on the tongue.

Safety Chains

Note: *Never attach safety chains to the bumper.*

Always connect the safety chains to the hook retainers of your vehicle hitch.

To connect the safety chains, cross them under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning tight corners. Do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer Brakes

WARNING



Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if you install them properly and adjust them to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and federal regulations.

The rating for the tow vehicle's braking system operation is at the gross vehicle weight rating, not the gross combined weight rating.

Trailer Lamps

WARNING



Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working.

Towing

Before Towing a Trailer

Practice turning, stopping and backing up to get the feel of your vehicle-trailer combination before starting on a trip. When turning, make wider turns so the trailer wheels clear curbs and other obstacles.

When Towing a Trailer

- Do not drive faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) during the first 500 miles (800 kilometers).
- Do not make full-throttle starts.
- Check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts thoroughly after you have traveled 50 miles (80 kilometers).
- When stopped in congested or heavy traffic during hot weather, place the gearshift in position **P** to aid engine and transmission cooling and to help A/C performance.
- Turn off the speed control with heavy loads or in hilly terrain. The speed control may turn off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.
- Shift to a lower gear when driving down a long or steep hill. Do not apply the brakes continuously, as they may overheat and become less effective.

- If your transmission is equipped with a Grade Assist or Tow/Haul feature, use this feature when towing. This provides engine braking and helps eliminate excessive transmission shifting for optimum fuel economy and transmission cooling.
- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached. Anticipate stops and brake gradually.
- Avoid parking on a grade. However, if you must park on a grade:
 1. Turn the steering wheel to point your vehicle tires away from traffic flow.
 2. Set your vehicle parking brake.
 3. Place the automatic transmission in position **P**.
 4. Place wheel chocks in front and back of the trailer wheels. (Chocks not included with vehicle.)

Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft (PWC)

Note: *Disconnect the wiring to the trailer before backing the trailer into the water.*

Note: *Reconnect the wiring to the trailer after removing the trailer from the water.*

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 6 inches (15 centimeters) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

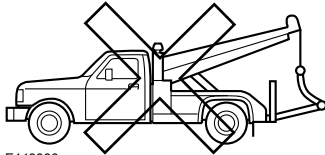
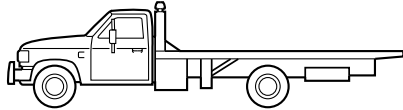
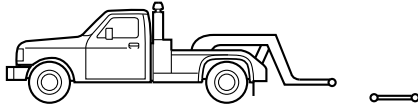
Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components:

- Causing internal damage to the components.
- Affecting driveability, emissions, and reliability.

Any time the rear axle submerges in water, replace the rear axle lubricant. Water may contaminate the rear axle lubricant, which is not a normal maintenance inspection item unless there is a possibility of a leak or other axle repair is required.

Towing

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



E143886

If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure. Vehicle damage may occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

It is acceptable to have your front-wheel drive vehicle towed from the front if using proper wheel lift equipment to raise the front wheels off the ground. When towing in this manner, the rear wheels can remain on the ground.

Front-wheel drive vehicles must have the front wheels placed on a tow dolly when towing your vehicle from the rear using wheel lift equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission.

Towing an all-wheel drive vehicle requires that all wheels be off the ground, such as using a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission, all-wheel drive system and vehicle.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

Emergency Towing

You can flat-tow (all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain/transmission configuration) your disabled vehicle (without access to wheel dollies, car-hauling trailer, or flatbed transport vehicle) under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so you tow it in a forward direction.
- You place the transmission in neutral (N). If you cannot place the transmission in neutral (N), you may need to override it. See **Transmission** (page 139).
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 miles (80 kilometers).

Towing

Recreational Towing

Note: Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 105).

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motorhome or truck. These guidelines are to make sure you do not damage your vehicle after it is hooked-up to the recreational vehicle or tow dolly.

You can tow your front-wheel drive vehicle with all four wheels on the ground or with the front wheels off the ground by using a tow dolly. If you are using a tow dolly, follow the instructions specified by the equipment provider. If you are towing with all four wheels on the ground, see the following instructions.

You can tow your all-wheel drive vehicle with all four wheels on the ground or with all four wheels off the ground using a vehicle transport trailer. Do not tow your all-wheel drive vehicle with the front wheels off the ground (by using a tow dolly) and the rear

wheels on the ground. This causes damage to your all-wheel drive system. If you are using a vehicle transport trailer, follow the instruction specified by the equipment provider. If you are towing with all four wheels on the ground, see the following instructions.

If you tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground:

- Tow only in the forward direction.
- Release the parking brake.
- Place the transmission in neutral (N).
- Do not exceed 65 mph (105 km/h).
- Start the engine and allow it to run for five minutes at the beginning of each day and every six hours thereafter. With the engine running and your foot on the brake, shift into drive (D) and then into reverse (R) before shifting back into neutral (N).



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P - R - E - S - E - N - T

Driving Hints

BREAKING-IN

You need to break in new tires for approximately 300 miles (480 kilometers). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

Do not tow during the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers).

ECONOMICAL DRIVING

Fuel economy is affected by several things such as how you drive, the conditions you drive under and how you maintain your vehicle.

There are some things to keep in mind that may improve your fuel economy:

- Accelerate and slow down in a smooth, moderate fashion.
- Drive at steady speeds.
- Anticipate stops; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.

- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving.
 - When running errands, go to the furthest destination first and then work your way back home.
- Close the windows for high-speed driving.
- Drive at reasonable speeds. (Traveling at 65 mph/105 kph uses about 15% less fuel than traveling at 75 mph/121 kph).
- Keep the tires properly inflated and use only the recommended size.
- Use the recommended engine oil.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

There are also some things you may want to avoid doing because they reduce your fuel economy:

- Avoid sudden or hard accelerations.
- Avoid revving the engine before turning off the car.
- Avoid long idle periods.
- Do not warm up your vehicle on cold mornings.
- Reduce the use of air conditioning and heat.
- Avoid using speed control in hilly terrain.

- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving.
- Avoid carrying unnecessary weight (approximately 1 mpg [0.4 kilometers/liter] is lost for every 400 lbs [180 kilograms] of weight carried).
- Avoid adding particular accessories to your vehicle (e.g. bug deflectors, rollbars/light bars, running boards, ski racks).
- Avoid driving with the wheels out of alignment.

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

WARNING



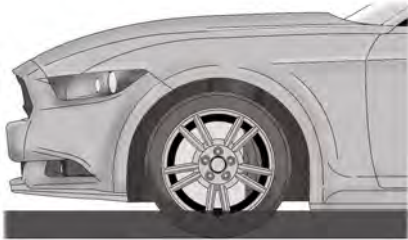
Do not drive through flowing or deep water as you may lose control of your vehicle.

Note: Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.

Note: Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.

Driving Hints







E176360

When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction may be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:





- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the exterior lights work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

FLOOR MATS

WARNINGS

-  Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.
-  Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.
-  Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to make sure mats do not shift out of position.
-  Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.

WARNINGS

-  Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.
-  Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.
-  Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.
-  Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing a loss of vehicle control.

Driving Hints



To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

Roadside Emergencies

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

Vehicles Sold In the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance

If you ever need help on the road, the Lincoln Motor Company is there for you with nationwide, 24-hours-a-day, seven-days-a-week assistance.

The service is available:

- Throughout the life of the vehicle for original owners.
- For six years or 70,000 mi (112,654.08 km) (whichever comes first) within the extended powertrain warranty coverage period for subsequent owners.
- For the coverage period listed on the Roadside Assistance Card included in your Owner's Manual portfolio.

This complimentary Roadside Assistance program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and includes:

- A flat tire change with a good spare (except vehicles supplied with a tire inflation kit).
- Battery jump start.
- Lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the client's responsibility).

- Fuel delivery — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall deliver up to 2.0 gal (7.5 L) of gasoline or 5.0 gal (18.9 L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Roadside Assistance limits fuel delivery service to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- Winch out — available within 100 ft (30.48 m) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- Towing — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall tow Lincoln eligible vehicles to the client's selling or preferred dealer within 100 mi (161 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest Lincoln dealer. If a client requests a tow to a selling or preferred dealer that is more than 100 mi (161 km) from the disablement location, the client shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 100 mi (161 km).

Roadside Assistance includes up to \$200 coverage for a towed trailer if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the towing vehicle is operational but the trailer is not, then the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

Vehicles Sold In the United States: Using Roadside Assistance

United States Lincoln vehicle clients who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-521-4140.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company will reimburse a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest Lincoln dealership within 100 mi (161 km). To obtain reimbursement information, United States Lincoln vehicle clients, call 1-800-521-4140. Ford Motor Company will ask you to submit your original receipts.

Vehicles Sold In Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance

Canadian clients who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-387-9333.

Sykes Assistance Services Corporation administers the Roadside Assistance program. You must receive covered services in Canada or the continental United States. Coverage extends to vehicles that use public, non-seasonal, annually traveled roadways. Roadside Assistance coverage does not extend to vehicles involved in cross-country

Roadside Emergencies

driving, logging, autocross and any other form of off-road use. Well maintained roads and surfaces help ensure safe travel for the Supplier, and allow their representatives to perform service as per the standard operating procedures.

In Remote Locations

If our supplier cannot take your vehicle by road to the nearest authorized dealership, transportation by rail or water may be necessary. The program covers a tow to the dock or rail terminal and also to the dealership at the end of the trip.

For rail or water transportation, however, contact your authorized dealer to confirm if you are eligible for additional coverage before you authorize or pay for the service.

Call the Lincoln Roadside Assistance at 1-800-387-9333 for additional information.

Vehicles Sold In Canada: Using Roadside Assistance

Canadian Roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the United States coverage. Please refer to your warranty information or visit our website at www.lincolncanada.com for information on Canadian services and benefits.

Canadian clients who need to obtain roadside information, call 1-800-387-9333 or visit our website at www.lincolncanada.com.

HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS

Note: *If used when the vehicle is not running, the battery will lose charge. There may be insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*



The hazard warning button is located on the instrument panel. Use it when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

- Press the button to turn on the hazard warning function, and the front and rear direction indicators will flash.
- Press the button again to turn them off.

FUEL SHUTOFF

WARNING



Failure to inspect and, if necessary, repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision.

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle includes a fuel pump shutoff feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shutoff.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle. For vehicles equipped with a key system:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 to re-enable the fuel pump.

For vehicles equipped with a push button start system:

1. Press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
2. Press the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to start the vehicle.
3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
4. You can either attempt to start the engine by pressing the brake pedal and the **START/STOP** button, or switch on the ignition only by pressing the **START/STOP** button without pressing the brake pedal. Both ways re-enable the fuel system.


Roadside Emergencies


Note: When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once your vehicle determines that the systems are safe, then the vehicle will allow you to restart.


Note: In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact an authorized dealer.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

WARNINGS

 The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks, or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in personal injury or vehicle damage.

 Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.

 Use only an adequate-sized cable with insulated clamps.

Preparing Your Vehicle

Note: Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.


Note: Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.

Note: Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.

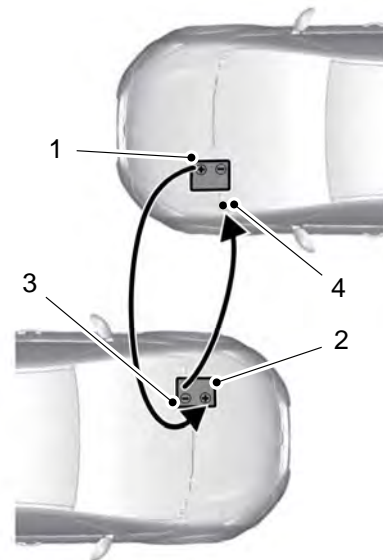
Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch. Turn all accessories off.

Connecting the Jumper Cables

WARNING

 Do not attach the cables to fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold or electrical components as grounding points. Stay clear of moving parts. To avoid reverse polarity connections, make sure that you correctly identify the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals on both the disabled and booster vehicles before connecting the cables.

Note: In the illustration, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.



E142664

1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.

Roadside Emergencies

2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, or connect the negative (-) cable to a ground connection point if available.

WARNING



Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

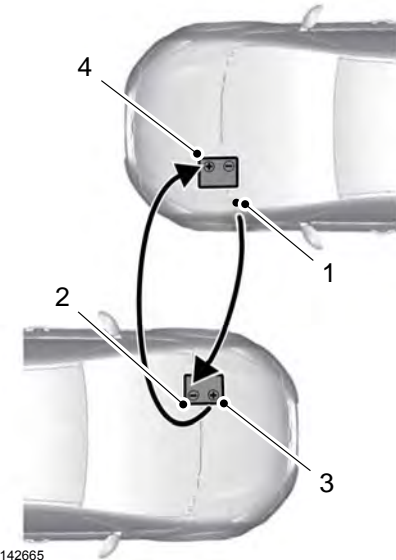
Jump Starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and rev the engine moderately, or press the accelerator gently to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 rpms, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.



E142665

1. Remove the jumper cable from the ground metal surface or connecting point, if available.
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.



Information Provided by:

210 DEALER
PROCESS

Roadside Emergencies

3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle's battery.

After the disabled vehicle has been started and the jumper cables removed, allow it to idle for several minutes so the battery can recharge.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system flashes the turn signal lamps and sounds the horn (intermittently) in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy) or the safety belt pretensioners.

The horn and lamps will turn off when:

- You press the hazard control button.
- You press the panic button on the remote entry transmitter (if equipped).
- Your vehicle runs out of power.

Customer Assistance

GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

Away From Home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

Mailing address

Ford Motor Company
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 6248
Dearborn, MI 48121

Telephone

1-800-521-4140
(TDD for the hearing impaired:
1-800-232-5952)

Online

Additional information and resources are available online at www.lincolnowner.com

These are some of the items that can be found online:

- U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name, City/State, or Zip Code
- Owner Manuals
- Maintenance Schedules
- Recalls
- Ford Extended Service Plans
- Ford Genuine Accessories
- Service specials and promotions.

In Canada:

Mailing address

Lincoln Customer Relationship Centre
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4

Telephone

1-800-387-9333

Online

www.ford.ca

Twitter English

@LincolnMotorCA

Twitter French

@LincolnQC

Instagram

@LincolnMotorCA

Facebook

/LincolnMotorCA

Additional Assistance

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling/servicing authorized dealer.



Customer Assistance

2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center.

In order to help us serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number.
- Your telephone number (home and business).
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located.
- The vehicle's current odometer reading.

In some states, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws. Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt in some states.

In the United States, a warranty dispute must be submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18000 miles (29 000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR
2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time).

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company
16800 Executive Plaza Drive
Mail Drop 3NE-B
Dearborn, MI 48126

Customer Assistance

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to BBB AUTO LINE before asserting in court any rights or remedies conferred by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b). You are also required to use BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. sec. 2301 et seq. If you choose to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) or the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, resort to BBB AUTO LINE is not required by those statutes.

THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the Getting the Services you need section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

BBB AUTO LINE Application: Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:

**BBB AUTO LINE
3033 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 600
Arlington, Virginia 22201**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

Note: *Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.*



Customer Assistance

UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit www.camvap.ca.

GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel.

If you cannot find unleaded fuel or can only get fuel with an anti-knock index lower than is recommended for your vehicle, contact our Customer Relationship Center.

The use of leaded fuel in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company or Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using leaded fuel may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the United States.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Asia-Pacific Region, Sub-Saharan Africa, U.S. Virgin Islands, Central America, the Caribbean, and Israel, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY
Customer Relationship Center
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, Michigan 48101
U.S.A.
Telephone: (313) 594-4857
Fax: (313) 390-0804
Email: expcac@ford.com

For customers in Guam, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (CNMI), American Samoa, and the U.S. Virgin Islands, please feel free to call our Toll-Free Number: (800) 841-FORD (3673).



Customer Assistance

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Puerto Rico, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY
Customer Relationship Center
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, Michigan 48101
U.S.A.
Telephone: (800) 841-FORD (3673)
FAX: (313) 390-0804
Email: prcac@ford.com
www.ford.com.pr

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY
Customer Relationship Center
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, Michigan 48101
U.S.A.
Telephone: +971 4 3326084
Toll-Free Number of the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia: 800 8971409
Local Telephone Number of Kuwait: 24810575
FAX: +971 4 3327299
Email: menacac@ford.com
www.me.ford.com

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate to any of the above locations, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Motor Company Export Operations & Global Growth Initiatives by emailing expcac@ford.com.

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. In the event your inquiry is unresolved, communicate your concern with the dealership's Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager. If you require additional assistance or clarification, please contact the respective Customer Relationship Center as previously listed.

**Customers in the U.S. should call
1-800-392-3673.**

ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED
47911 Halyard Drive
Plymouth, Michigan 48170
Attention: Customer Service

Or to order a free publication catalog, call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website:

www.helminc.com

(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)

Obtaining a French Owner's Manual

French Owner's Manual can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by contacting Helm, Incorporated using the contact information listed previously in this section.

Customer Assistance

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)



E142557

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to:

Administrator

1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from
<http://www.safercar.gov>.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada.

Transport Canada Contact Information

Website	http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/menu.htm
Phone	1-800-333-0510

Fuses

FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

Power Distribution Box

WARNINGS



Always disconnect the battery before servicing high-current fuses.

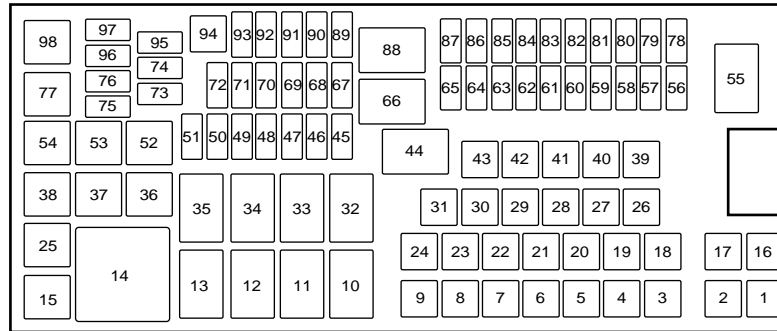
WARNINGS



To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The power distribution box is in the engine compartment. It has high-current fuses that protect the vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

If you disconnect and reconnect the battery, you will need to reset some features. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 248).



E173618



Information Provided by:

218 DEALER

Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
1	-	Not used.
2	-	Not used.
3	-	Not used.
4	30A ²	Wiper motor relay.
5	50A ²	Anti-lock brake system pump.
6	-	Not used.
7	-	Not used.
8	20A ²	Moonroof, power sunshade.
9	20A ²	Second row power point.
10	-	Not used.
11	-	Heated rear window relay.
12	-	Not used.
13	-	Starter motor relay.
14	-	Left-hand cooling fan number 2 relay.
15	-	Fuel pump relay.
16	-	Not used.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
EXPLORER

Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
17	-	Not used.
18	40A ²	Front blower motor relay.
19	30A ²	Starter relay.
20	20A ² A	Storage bin power point.
21	20A ²	Rear heated seat module.
22	-	Massage control seats relay.
23	30A ²	Driver power seat.
		Memory module.
24	-	Not used.
25	-	Not used.
26	40A ²	Heated rear window relay.
27	20A ²	Cigar lighter.
28	30A ²	Climate controlled seats.
29	40A ²	Electric fan relay 1.
30	40A ²	Electric fan relay 2.

Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
31	25A ²	Electric fan relay 3.
32	-	Not used.
33	-	Right-hand cooling fan relay.
34	-	Blower motor relay.
35	-	Left-hand cooling fan Number 1 relay.
36	-	Not used.
37	-	Not used.
38	-	Not used.
39	-	Not used.
40	30A ²	Left front smart window motor.
41	30A ²	Left rear smart window motor.
42	30A ²	Passenger power seat.
43	20A ²	Anti-lock brake system valves.
44	-	Not used.
45	5A ¹	Rain sensor.
46	-	Not used.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
EXPERIENCE

Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
47	-	Not used.
48	-	Not used.
49	-	Not used.
50	15A ¹	Heated Mirrors.
51	-	Not used.
52	-	Not used.
53	-	Not used.
54	-	Not used.
55	-	Wiper relay.
56	-	Not used.
57	20A ¹	Left-hand high intensity discharge headlamp.
58	10A ¹	Alternator A-line.
59	10A ¹	Brake on/off switch.
60	-	Not used.
61	-	Not used.
62	-	A/C clutch relay.



Information Provided by:

222 DEALER
ELECTRONICS

Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
63	-	Not used.
64	15A ¹	Massage control seats.
65	30A ¹	Fuel pump relay. Fuel injectors.
66	-	Powertrain control module relay.
67	20A ¹	Oxygen sensor heater.
		Mass airflow sensor.
		Variable camshaft timing solenoid valve.
		Canister vent solenoid.
		Canister purge solenoid.
68	20A ¹	Ignition coils.
69	20A ¹	Vehicle power 1 (powertrain control module).
70	15A ¹	A/C clutch.
		Fan control relay coils 1-3).
		Variable air conditioning compressor.
		Auxiliary transmission warmup.
		Turbo charge waste-gate control.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P - R - E - S - E - N - T

Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
		Electronic compressor bypass valve.
		All-wheel drive module.
		Positive crankcase ventilation heater.
71	-	Not used.
72	-	Not used.
73	-	Not used.
74	-	Not used.
75	-	Not used.
76	-	Not used.
77	-	Not used.
78	20A ¹	Right high-intensity discharge headlamp.
79	5A ¹	Adaptive cruise control module
80	-	Not used.
81	-	Not used.
82	-	Not used.
83	-	Not used.
84	-	Not used.

Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
85	-	Not used.
86	7.5A ¹	Powertrain control module.
		Keep alive power and relay.
		Canister vent solenoid.
87	5A ¹	Run/start relay.
88	-	Run/start relay.
89	5A ¹	Front blower relay coil.
		Electrical power assist steering module.
90	10A ¹	Powertrain control module run/start.
91	10A ¹	Adaptive cruise control module.
92	10A ¹	Anti-lock brake system module.
		Adaptive headlamp module.
93	5A ¹	Rear window defroster relay.
94	30A ²	Passenger compartment fuse panel run/start.
95	-	Not used.
96	-	Not used.

Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
97	-	Not used.
98	-	Not used.

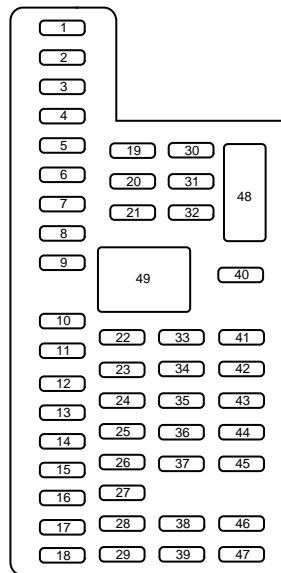
¹Mini Fuses

² Cartridge Fuses

Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel

The fuse panel is under the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel. You may need to remove a trim panel to access it.

Fuses



E173619



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P - R - C - E - S

227

Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
1	30A	Left front and right rear smart window motors.
2	15A	Driver seat switch.
3	30A	Right front smart window motor.
4	10A	Demand lamps battery saver relay.
5	20A	Audio amplifier Active noise control module.
6	5A	Not used (spare).
7	7.5A	Driver seat module logic. Left front door zone module. Keypad.
8	10A	Not used (spare).
9	10A	SYNC module. Electronic finish panel. Radio frequency transceiver module.
10	10A	Run accessory relay. Wiper relay. Rain-sense subfuse.
11	10A	Intelligent access module logic. Heads-up display.
12	15A	Puddle lamp.

Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
		Backlighting LED. Interior lighting.
13	15A	Right-hand direction indicators.
14	15A	Left-hand direction indicators.
15	15A	Stop lamp. Backup lamp.
16	10A	Right front low beam.
17	10A	Left front low beam.
18	10A	Start button. Keypad illumination. Brake-shift interlock. Powertrain control module wake-up. Immobilizer transceiver module.
19	20A	Audio amplifiers.
20	20A	All lock motor relay and coil. Driver lock motor relay and coil.
21	10A	Not used (spare).
22	20A	Horn relay.
23	15A	Steering wheel control module logic Instrument cluster.
24	15A	Steering wheel control module.

Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
		Datalink.
25	15A	Decklid release.
26	5A	Push button ignition switch.
27	20A	Intelligent access module power.
28	15A	Not used (spare).
29	20A	Radio. Global positioning system module
30	15A	Front park lamps.
31	5A	Not used (spare).
32	15A	Smart window motors. Master window and mirror switch. Rear window power sunshade module. Lock switch illumination.
33	10A	Suspension module.
34	10A	Reverse park aid module. Automatic high beam and lane departure module. Rear heated seat module. Blind spot monitor module. Rear video camera.
35	5A	Motorized humidity sensor. Heads-up display.



Information Provided by:

230 DEALER

Fuses


Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
36	10A	Heated steering wheel.
37	10A	Not used (spare).
38	10A	Moonroof module and switch.
39	15A	High beams.
40	10A	Rear park lamps.
41	7.5A	Occupant classification sensor. Restraint control module.
42	5A	Not used (spare).
43	10A	Not used (spare).
44	10A	Not used (spare).
45	5A	Not used (spare).
46	10A	Climate control module.
47	15A	Fog lamp relay.
48	30A Circuit breaker	Front passenger power window. Rear power windows.

Fuses

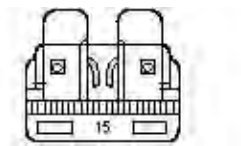
CHANGING A FUSE

Fuses

WARNING

 Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

E142430



If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

Standard Fuse Amperage Rating and Color

Color				
Fuse rating	Micro fuses	Dual micro fuses	M-type fuses	J-type fuses
5A	Tan	Tan	-	-
7.5A	Brown	Brown	-	-
10A	Red	Red	-	-
15A	Blue	Blue	Grey	-
20A	Yellow	-	Light Blue	Blue
25A	White	-	White	White
30A	Green	-	Pink	Pink

Fuses

Color				
Fuse rating	Micro fuses	Dual micro fuses	M-type fuses	J-type fuses
40A	-	-	Green	Green
50A	-	-	-	Red
60A	-	-	-	Yellow



Maintenance

GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

To help you service your vehicle, we provide scheduled maintenance information which makes tracking routine service easy. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 392).

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

Precautions

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material (such as cigarettes) away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

Working with the Engine Off

1. Set the parking brake and shift to park (P).
2. Switch off the engine.
3. Block the wheels.

Working with the Engine On

WARNING



To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

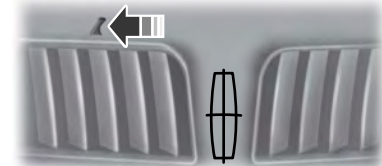
1. Set the parking brake and shift to park (P).

2. Block the wheels

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD



1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



Maintenance

2. Go to the front of your vehicle and locate the secondary release lever. The release lever is located below the grille.
3. Release the hood latch by pushing the yellow secondary release lever to the left-hand side of your vehicle.
4. Lift the hood until the lift cylinders hold it open.
5. To close, lower the hood and make sure that you close the hood properly and fully latch it.

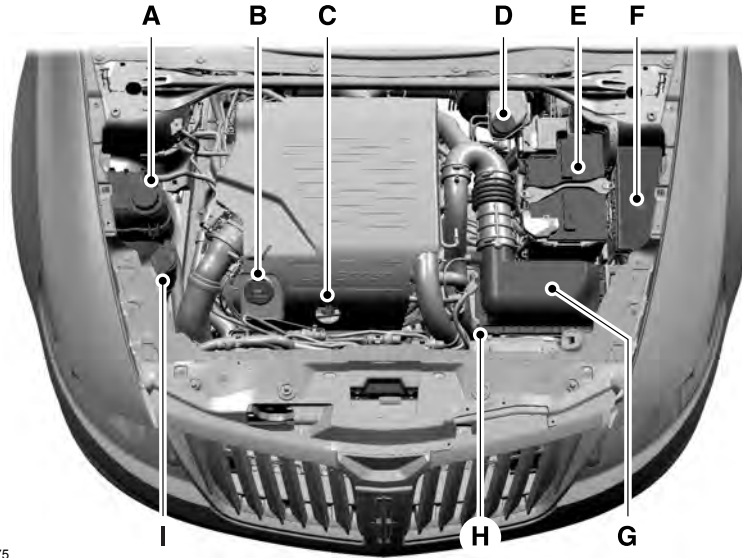


Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P - R - E - S - S

Maintenance

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 3.5L ECOBOOST™



E173375

- A. Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 240).
- B. Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 239).

Maintenance

- C. Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 239).
- D. Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 247).
- E. Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 248).
- F. Power distribution box. See **Fuses** (page 218).
- G. Air filter assembly. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 255).
- H. Automatic transmission dipstick (under air filter assembly). See **Automatic Transmission Fluid Check** (page 244).
- I. Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 248).

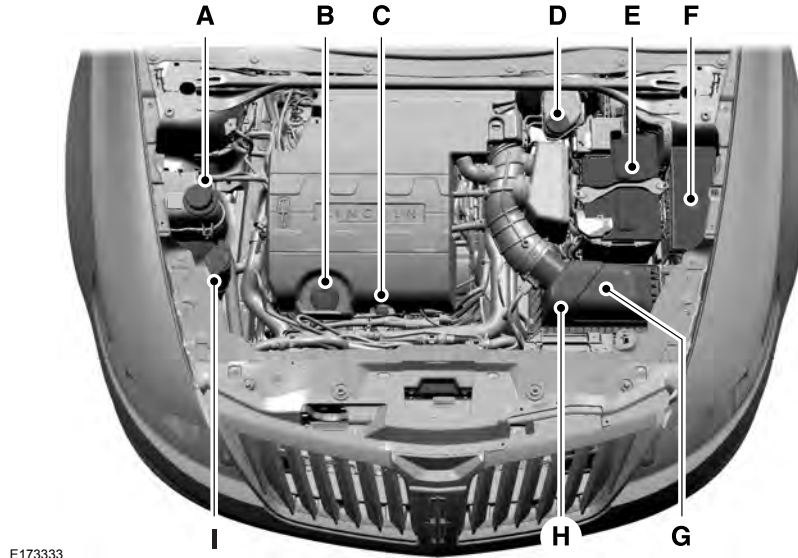


Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P - R - C - E - S

Maintenance

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 3.7L



- A. Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 240).
- B. Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 239).

Maintenance

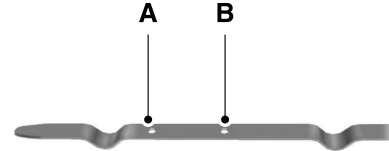
- C. Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 239).
- D. Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 247).
- E. Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 248).
- F. Power distribution box. See **Fuses** (page 218).
- G. Air filter assembly. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 255).
- H. Automatic transmission dipstick (under air filter assembly). See **Automatic Transmission Fluid Check** (page 244).
- I. Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 248).

Engine Shield



Some vehicles may be equipped with an aero-shield under the engine. This shield needs to be removed for service, including oil and filter changes. The shield has four quick-release fasteners to secure it in place.

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK



A MIN
B MAX

ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Switch the engine off and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Set the parking brake and ensure the gearshift is in park (P).
4. Open the hood. Protect yourself from engine heat.
5. Locate and carefully remove the engine oil level dipstick. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 236).

Maintenance

6. Wipe the dipstick clean. Insert the dipstick fully, then remove it again.
 - If the oil level is between the lower and upper holes, the oil level is acceptable. **DO NOT ADD OIL.**
 - If the oil level is below the lower hole, add enough oil to raise the level within the lower and upper holes.
 - Oil levels above the upper hole may cause engine damage. Some oil must be removed from the engine by an authorized dealer.
7. Put the oil level dipstick back into the oil dipstick tube and ensure it is fully seated.

Adding Engine Oil

Note: Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

Note: Do not remove the engine oil level dipstick when the engine is running.

Note: Do not add oil further than the MAX mark. Oil levels above the MAX mark may cause engine damage.



E142732

Only use oils certified for gasoline engines by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Council (ILSAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.

1. Check the engine oil level.
2. If the engine oil level is not within the normal range, add engine oil that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 290).
3. Remove the engine oil filler cap and use a funnel to pour the engine oil into the opening.

4. Recheck the engine oil level. Make sure the oil level is not above the normal operating range on the engine oil level dipstick.
5. Install the engine oil level dipstick and ensure it is fully seated.
6. Fully install the engine oil filler cap by turning the filler cap clockwise until three clicks are heard or until the cap is fully seated.

OIL CHANGE INDICATOR RESET

To reset the oil monitoring system after an oil change, See **General Information** (page 88).

ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

WARNINGS



Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, spilling coolant on hot engine parts can burn you.

Maintenance

WARNINGS



Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.



Do not add coolant further than the MAX mark.

Checking the Engine Coolant

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the engine coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 392).

Note: Make sure that the coolant level is between the MIN and MAX marks on the coolant reservoir.

Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the MAX mark.

Note: If the level is at the MIN mark, below the MIN mark, or empty, add coolant immediately.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -30°F (-34°C) and -34°F (-37°C).

Note: For best results, coolant concentration should be tested with a refractometer such as Robinair Coolant and Battery Refractometer 75240. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentrations.

Note: Automotive fluids are not interchangeable. Do not use engine coolant, antifreeze or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

Adding Engine Coolant

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants or additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Your warranty may not cover these damages.

Note: During normal vehicle operation, the engine coolant may change color from orange to pink or light red.

As long as the engine coolant is clear and uncontaminated, this color change does not indicate that the engine coolant has degraded, nor does it require that qualified personnel drain the engine coolant, flush the system or replace the engine coolant.

Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants may harm your engine's cooling system. The use of an improper coolant may harm engine and cooling system components and may void the warranty. Use prediluted engine coolant meeting the Ford specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 290).

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, qualified personnel:

1. Must drain the cooling system.
2. Chemically clean the coolant system with Motorcraft Premium Cooling System Flush.
3. Refill with engine coolant as soon as possible.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Maintenance

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any engine coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze or coolant.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the engine coolant.

When adding coolant:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure will escape as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted engine coolant meeting the Ford specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 290).
3. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle.
4. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the proper level.

Recycled Engine Coolant

Ford Motor Company does not recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.

Used engine coolant should be disposed of in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- It may be necessary to have a Ford authorized dealer increase the coolant concentration above 50%.
- A coolant concentration of 60% provides improved freeze point protection. Engine coolant concentrations above 60% decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- It may be necessary to have a Ford authorized dealer decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.
- A coolant concentration of 40% provides improved overheat protection. Engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the freeze and corrosion protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use prediluted engine coolant for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

What You Should Know About Fail-Safe Cooling

If you deplete the engine coolant supply, fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before you incur incremental component damage. The fail-safe distance depends on ambient temperatures, vehicle load and terrain.

How Fail-Safe Cooling Works

If the engine begins to overheat, the engine coolant temperature gauge will move to the red (hot) area and:

Maintenance



the coolant temperature warning light will illuminate



the service engine soon indicator will illuminate.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle will still operate. However:

- The engine power will be limited.
- This will disable the air conditioning system.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start your engine. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated

WARNINGS



Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.



Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

You have limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, so drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle will not maintain high-speed operation and the engine will operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch off the engine.
2. Tow your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level and add if low.
5. Re-start the engine and drive your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

Note: *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.*

Engine Fluid Temperature Management (If Equipped)

WARNINGS



To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the fluid temperatures reduce.



Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

Your vehicle can pull a trailer, but because of the added load, your vehicle's engine may temporarily reach higher temperatures during severe operating conditions such as ascending a long or steep grade while pulling a trailer in high temperatures.



Information Provided by:

DEALER

243

Maintenance

At this time, you may notice your engine coolant temperature gauge needle move toward the **H** and the **POWER REDUCED TO LOWER TEMP** message may appear in the information display.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power. In order to manage the engine fluid temperatures, your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on many factors such as vehicle loading, towing, grade and ambient temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to pull off the road. You can continue to drive your vehicle while this message is active.

The air conditioning may also cycle on and off during severe operating conditions to protect overheating of the engine. When the engine coolant temperature decreases to a normal operating temperature, the air conditioning will turn on once again.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red (hot) area, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and shift the transmission into **P**.

2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle moves away from the red (hot) area. After several minutes, if the temperature does not drop, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool before checking the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is normal, restart your engine and continue.
5. If the coolant is low, add coolant, and restart the engine. See **Adding Engine Coolant** or **How Fail-Safe Cooling Works** in this chapter for more information.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK

6F50/6F55 Transmission (If Equipped)

WARNINGS



The dipstick cap and surrounding components may be hot, use gloves.



Use gloves when moving the air filter assembly. Components will be hot.

Note: Automatic transmission fluid expands when warmed. To obtain an accurate fluid check, drive your vehicle until you warm it up, approximately 20 mi (30 km). If you operate your vehicle for an extended period at high speeds, in city traffic during hot weather or pulling a trailer, switch your vehicle off until it reaches normal operating temperatures to allow the fluid to cool before checking. Depending on vehicle use, cooling times could take up to 30 minutes or longer.

Refer to your scheduled maintenance information for scheduled intervals for fluid checks and changes. Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, you should check the fluid level if the transmission is not working properly. For example, if the transmission slips or shifts slowly or if you notice some sign of a fluid leak.

1. Drive your vehicle 20 mi (30 km) or until it reaches normal operating temperature.
2. Park your vehicle on a level surface and engage the parking brake.
3. With the parking brake engaged and your foot on the brake pedal, start the engine and move the gearshift lever through all of the gear ranges. Allow a minimum of 10 seconds for each gear to engage.
4. Put the gearshift lever in park (P) and leave the engine running.

Maintenance

Note: For vehicles with the EcoBoost engine, move the air filter assembly aside to access the transmission dipstick. See Moving the Air Filter Assembly for more information.

5. Remove the dipstick and wipe it clean with a dry, lint free clean rag. If necessary, refer to the Under hood overview in this chapter for the location of the dipstick.
6. Install the dipstick making sure you fully seat it in the filler tube by turning it to the locked position.
7. Remove the dipstick and inspect the fluid level. The fluid should be in the designated areas for normal operating temperature.

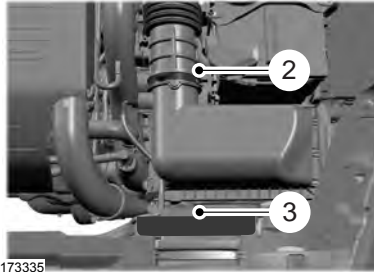
Moving the Air Filter Assembly (Accessing the Dipstick)

WARNING



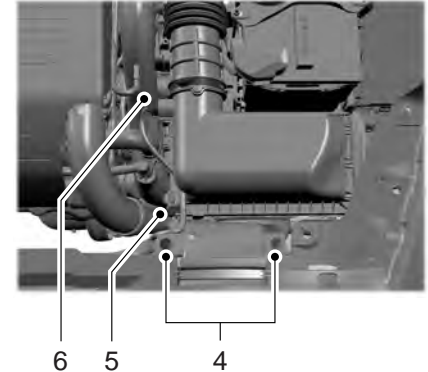
Do not run engine with the air filter disconnected.

1. Switch the engine off.



E173335

2. Clean the area around the clamp that connects the air filter assembly to the rubber hose and then loosen it.
3. Remove the bolt cover.



E173334

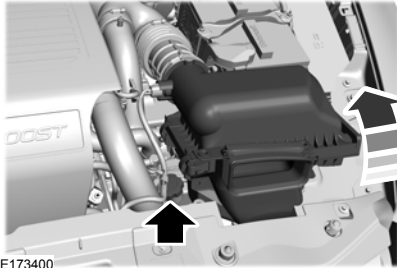
4. Remove two bolts that attach the air filter assembly to the front of the vehicle.
5. Remove the harness retaining clip by pulling up.
6. Do not disconnect the sensor.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
245

Maintenance

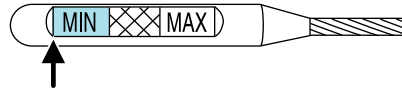


7. Pull the air filter assembly up to disconnect it from the seated grommets located under the air filter assembly.
8. Rotate the air filter assembly 90 degrees counterclockwise. Make sure the rubber hose is still connected to the air filter assembly.
9. Tighten the clamp.

You can now access the transmission fluid level indicator.

Checking the fluid level

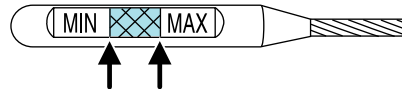
Low fluid level



If the fluid level is below the MIN range of the dipstick, add fluid to reach the hash mark level.

Note: If the fluid level is below the MIN level, do not drive the vehicle. An underfill condition may cause shift or engagement concerns or possible damage.

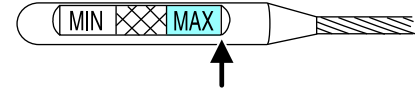
Correct fluid level



Check the transmission fluid at the normal operating temperatures between 180°F (82°C) and 200°F (93°C) on a level surface. Drive your vehicle until you warm it up to the normal operating temperature after approximately 20 mi (30 km).

Target the transmission fluid level within the cross-hatch area if at the normal operating temperature between 180°F (82°C) and 200°F (93°C).

High fluid level



If the fluid level is above the MAX range of the dipstick, remove fluid to reach the hashmark level.

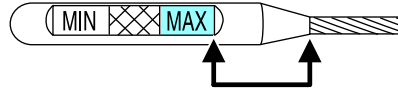
Maintenance

Note: Fluid level above the MAX level may cause shift or engagement concerns or possible damage. An overheating condition can cause high fluid levels. If you operate your vehicle for an extended period at high speeds, in city traffic during hot weather or pulling a trailer, you should switch your vehicle off until your vehicle reaches normal operating temperatures. Depending on vehicle use, cooling times could take up to 30 minutes or longer.

Adjusting Automatic Transmission Fluid Levels



E158845



E158846

Before adding any fluid, make sure the correct type is used. The type of fluid used is normally indicated on the dipstick and in the Technical Specifications section in this chapter.

Note: An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift or engagement concerns or possible damage.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components. Reinstall the air filter assembly. After you check the fluid level and adjust as necessary, do the following:

1. Switch the engine off.
2. Loosen the clamp holding the air filter assembly to the rubber hose.

3. Seat the air filter assembly back into the grommets by pushing down on the air filter assembly.
4. Tighten the clamp.
5. Install and tighten the two bolts that attach the air filter assembly to the front of the vehicle.
6. Install the bolt cover.
7. Reinstall the harness retaining clip into the front of the air filter assembly.

BRAKE FLUID CHECK

Fluid levels between the MIN and MAX lines are within the normal operating range; there is no need to add fluid. If the fluid levels are outside of the normal operating range, the performance of the system could be compromised; seek service from your authorized dealer immediately.


POWER STEERING FLUID CHECK

Your vehicle is equipped with an electric power steering (EPS) system. There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.

Maintenance

WASHER FLUID CHECK

WARNING

 If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40°F (5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 290).


State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.


FUEL FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.


CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY


WARNINGS

 Batteries normally produce explosive gases that can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide proper ventilation.

 This vehicle may be equipped with more than one battery, removal of cable from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Be sure to disconnect cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.

WARNINGS

 When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

 Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

Note: *If your battery has a cover/shield, make sure it is reinstalled after the battery has been cleaned or replaced.*

Note: *Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.*

Note: *Electrical or electronic accessories or components added to your vehicle by the dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability.*

Maintenance

Your vehicle is equipped with a Motorcraft maintenance-free battery which normally does not require additional water during its life of service.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry. Also, make certain the battery cables are always tightly fastened to the battery terminals.

If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

It is recommended that the negative battery cable terminal be disconnected from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period of time.

Because your vehicle's engine is electronically controlled by a computer, some control conditions are maintained by power from the battery. When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the engine must relearn its idle and fuel trim strategy for optimum driveability and performance.

Flexible fuel vehicles (FFV) must also relearn the ethanol content of the fuel for optimum driveability and performance. To begin this process:

1. With your vehicle at a complete stop, set the parking brake.
2. Put the gearshift in **P**(Park), turn off all accessories.
3. Start the engine. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature.
4. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
5. Turn the air conditioning on and allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
6. Release the parking brake. With your foot on the brake pedal and with the air conditioning on, put your vehicle in **D** (Drive) and allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
 - If you do not allow the engine to relearn its idle trim, the idle quality of your vehicle may be adversely affected until the idle trim is eventually relearned.
7. Drive your vehicle to complete the relearning process
 - Your vehicle may need to be driven 10 miles (16 kilometers) or more to relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy along with the ethanol content for flexible fuel vehicles.
 - For flexible fuel vehicles, if you are operating on E85, you may experience poor starts or an inability to start the engine and driveability problems until the fuel trim and ethanol content have been relearned.

If the battery has been disconnected or a new battery has been installed, the clock and radio settings must be reset once the battery is reconnected.

Maintenance

Always dispose of automotive batteries in a responsible manner. Follow your local authorized standards for disposal. Call your local authorized recycling center to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.

Battery Management System (If Equipped)

The battery management system (BMS) monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life. If excessive battery drain is detected, the system may temporarily disable certain electrical features to protect the battery. Those electrical accessories affected include the rear defrost, heated/cooled seats, climate control fan, heated steering wheel, audio and navigation system. A message may be shown in the information displays to alert the driver that battery protection actions are active. These messages are only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.

Electrical accessory installation

To ensure proper operation of the Battery Management System, any electrical devices that are added to your vehicle should not have their ground connection made directly at the negative battery post. A connection at the negative battery post can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *Electrical or electronic accessories added to your vehicle by the dealer or the owner, may adversely affect battery performance and durability, and may affect the performance of other electrical systems in your vehicle.*

When a battery replacement is required, the battery should only be replaced with a Ford-recommended replacement battery that matches the electrical requirements of your vehicle. After battery replacement, or in some cases after charging the battery with the external charger, the Battery Management System requires eight hours of vehicle sleep time (key off with doors closed) to relearn the new battery state of charge. Prior to relearning the state of charge, the Battery Management System may disable electrical features (to protect the battery) earlier than normal.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E142463

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

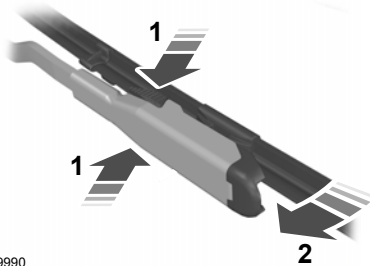
Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

The wiper arms can be manually moved when the ignition is off. This allows for ease of blade replacement and cleaning under the blades.

1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass.

Maintenance



E129990

2. Press the locking buttons together.
3. Rotate and remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place. Lower the wiper arm and blade back to the windshield. The wiper arms will automatically return to their normal position when the ignition is turned on.

Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

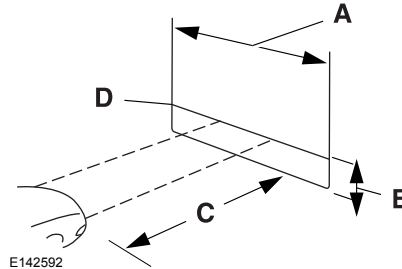
Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield.

ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

Vertical Aim Adjustment

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, have the alignment of your headlamps checked by your authorized dealer.

Headlamp Aiming Target



E142592

- A 8 feet (2.4 meters)
- B Center height of lamp to ground
- C 25 feet (7.6 meters)
- D Horizontal reference line

Vertical Aim Adjustment

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.
2. Measure the height from the center of your headlamp (indicated by a 3.0 millimeter circle on the lens) to the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height (a piece of masking tape works well).

Note: To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, you may want to block the light from one headlamp while adjusting the other.

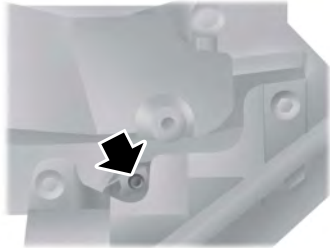
3. Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood. Cover one of the headlamps so no light hits the wall.

Maintenance



E142465

4. There is a distinct cut-off (change from light to dark) in the left portion of the beam pattern. Position the top edge of this cut-off 2 inches (5 centimeters) below the horizontal reference line.



E167359

5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Use a Phillips #2 screwdriver to turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise to adjust the vertical aim of the headlamp. The horizontal edge of the brighter light should touch the horizontal reference line.
6. Repeat Steps 3 through 7 to adjust the other headlamp.
7. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Horizontal aim is not required for this vehicle and is not adjustable.

CHANGING A BULB

Lamp Assembly Condensation

Exterior lamps are vented to accommodate normal changes in pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal

condensation occurs, a thin film of mist can form on the interior of the lens. The thin mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation. Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- Presence of thin mist (no streaks, drip marks or droplets).
- Fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable moisture (usually caused by a lamp water leak) are:

- Water puddle inside the lamp.
- Large water droplets, drip marks or streaks present on the interior of the lens.

Take your vehicle to a dealer for service if any of the above conditions of unacceptable moisture are present.

Replacing HID Headlamp Bulbs

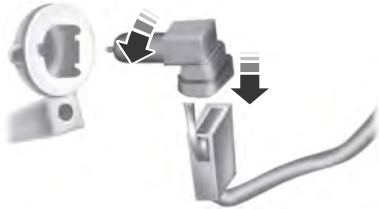
The headlamps on your vehicle use a high intensity discharge source. These lamps operate at a high voltage. See an authorized dealer.

Maintenance

Replacing Front Parking, Direction Indicator and Sidemarker Bulbs

These lamps are designed with LED light sources. See an authorized dealer.

Replacing Fog Lamp Bulbs (If Equipped)



E163826

1. Make sure the headlamps are off.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector from the fog lamp bulb.
3. Turn the bulb counterclockwise and remove it from the fog lamp.
4. Install the new bulb in reverse order.

Replacing Brake, Tail, Rear Direction Indicator and Reverse Lamp Bulbs

These lamps are designed with LED light sources. See an authorized dealer.

Replacing High-mount Brake Lamp Bulbs

These lamps are designed with LED light sources. See an authorized dealer.

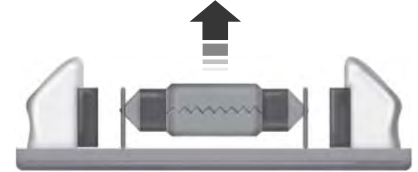
Replacing the License Plate Lamp Bulb

1. Make sure the lighting control switch is in the off position.



E178598

2. Remove the screws and lens from the license plate lamp assembly.



E178599

3. Carefully pull the bulb straight out from the lamp assembly.

Install new bulb in reverse order.

BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

The specified replacement bulbs are in the chart below. Headlamp bulbs must be marked with an authorized D.O.T. (Department of Transportation) for North America to affirm lamp performance, light brightness and pattern and safe visibility. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb burn time.

Maintenance

Function	Trade number
* Headlamp (high intensity discharge) Low and High	D3S
* Sidemarker - front	LED
* Park lamp - front	LED
* Turn lamp - front	7444NA
Signal indicator mirror lamp	LED
Approach lamp	LED
* Tail and brake lamp	LED
* Turn lamp - rear	LED
* Backup lamp	LED
License plate lamp	W5W
* High-mount brake lamp	LED
Interior lamps	W5W

* To replace these lamps, see an authorized dealer.

To replace instrument panel lights, see an authorized dealer.

Maintenance

CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER

WARNING



To reduce the risk of vehicle damage or personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it when the engine is running.

When changing the air filter element, use only the air filter element listed. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 290).

For EcoBoost equipped vehicles, when servicing the air cleaner, it is important that no foreign material enter the air induction system. The engine and turbocharger are susceptible to damage from even small particles.

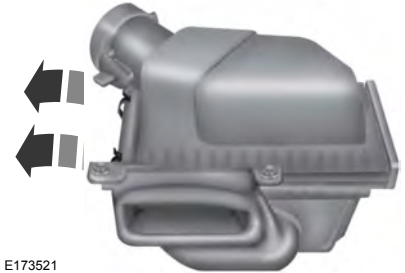
Change the air filter element at the proper interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 392).

Note: Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.

3.5L EcoBoost Engine



3.7L Engine



1. Release the clamps that secure the air filter housing cover.
2. Carefully lift the air filter housing cover.
3. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
4. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air filter housing and cover to make sure no dirt gets in the engine and to make sure you have a good seal.
5. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if not properly seated.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
255

Maintenance

6. Install the air filter housing cover.
7. Engage the clamps to secure the air filter housing cover to the air filter housing.

Vehicle Care

GENERAL INFORMATION

Your Ford or Lincoln authorized dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes.

CLEANING PRODUCTS

For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

- Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42)
- Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15)
- Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3-A)
- Motorcraft Dusting Cloth (ZC-24)
- Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (U.S. only) (ZC-20)
- Motorcraft Engine Shampoo (Canada only) (CXC-66-A)
- Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-101)
- Motorcraft Premium Glass Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-100)
- Motorcraft Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid (Canada only) [CXC-37-(A, B, D or F)]

- Motorcraft Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant (U.S. only) (ZC-32-B2)
- Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54)
- Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner (ZC-56)
- Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover (U.S. only) (ZC-14)
- Motorcraft Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23)
- Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A)

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, we recommend Motorcraft Detail Wash.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, for example dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash your vehicle when is hot to the touch, or during strong or direct sunlight.

- Dry your vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel to eliminate water spotting.
- Immediately remove fuel spillages, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. We recommend Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.
- Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

Note: *Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage painted surfaces. If these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash the affected area as soon as possible.*

Vehicle Care

Exterior Chrome Parts

- Apply a high quality-cleaning product to bumpers and other chrome parts. Follow the manufacturer's instructions. We recommend Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner.
- Do not apply the cleaning product to hot surfaces. Do not leave the cleaning product on chrome surfaces longer than the time recommended.
- Using other non-recommended cleaners can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

Note: *Never use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.*

Note: *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

Exterior Plastic Parts

For routine cleaning we recommend Motorcraft Detail Wash. If tar or grease spots are present, we recommend Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

Stripes or Graphics (If Equipped)

Do not use a commercial or high-pressure sprayer on the surface or edge of stripes and graphics. This can damage them and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle surface.

Underbody

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free of debris or foreign material.

WAXING

Regular waxing is necessary to protect your car's paint from the elements. We recommend that you wash and wax the painted surface once or twice a year.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight. Always wash your vehicle before applying wax.

- Use a quality wax that does not contain abrasives.
- Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax.
- Apply a small amount of wax in a back-and-forth motion, not in circles.

- Do not allow wax to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim. The wax will discolor or stain the parts over time.
 - Roof racks.
 - Bumpers.
 - Grained door handles.
 - Side moldings.
 - Mirror housings.
 - Windshield cowl area.
- Do not apply wax to glass areas.
- After waxing, your car's paint should feel smooth, and be free of streaks and smudges.

CLEANING THE ENGINE

Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal.

Vehicle Care

When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean. In Canada, use Motorcraft Engine Shampoo.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well, or the area in and around these locations.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.

CLEANING THE WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

Car wash chemicals and environmental fallout can result in windshield and wiper blade contamination. Dirty windshield and wipers will result in poor windshield wiper operation. Keep the windshield and wiper blades clean to maintain windshield wiper performance.

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.
- For windshields contaminated with tree sap, chemicals, wax or bugs, clean the entire windshield using steel wool (no greater than 0000 grade) in a circular motion and rinse with water.
- Clean the wiper blades with isopropyl rubbing alcohol or windshield washer concentrate.

Note: Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

WARNINGS



Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's safety belts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.



On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a collision.

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats, safety belts and seats equipped with side airbags:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner.

Vehicle Care

- If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover. In Canada, use Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.
- Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.

CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL AND INSTRUMENT CLUSTER LENS

WARNING



Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

Note: Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces. See **Cleaning Leather Seats** (page 260).

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.
- Do not use any household cleaning products or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.
- Wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.
- Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill onto interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Your warranty may not cover these damages.

If a staining liquid like coffee or juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces:

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean, soft cloth as quickly as possible.

2. Use Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner or a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors. Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.
3. Alternatively, wipe the surface with a clean, soft cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
4. If necessary, apply more soap and water solution or cleaning product to a clean, soft cloth and press it onto the soiled area. Allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.
5. Remove the soaked cloth, then with a clean, damp cloth, use a rubbing motion for 60 seconds on the soiled area.
6. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING LEATHER SEATS (If

Equipped)

Note: Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

Vehicle Care

For cleaning and removing spots and stains such as dye transfer, use Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner or a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors.

Note: Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.

You should:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Clean and treat spills and stains as soon as possible.

Do not use the following products as these may damage the leather:

- Oil and petroleum or silicone-based leather conditioners.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcohol solutions.
- Solvents or cleaners intended specifically for rubber, vinyl and plastics.

Note: Do not use Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner ZC-56 on Lincoln Black Label, Presidential or Reserve Leathers because it can damage those and other semi-aniline leather seating fabrics. It can also damage surround microfiber accent surfaces. To clean Lincoln Black Label, Presidential or Reserve Leathers, first vacuum the seats to remove loose dirt. Then wipe the leather with a clean soft cloth dampened with lukewarm water and a mild soap. Wiper the leather again with a slightly damp cloth to remove soap residue, and dry with a soft cloth. To maintain the leather's resiliency, it should be cleaned whenever soiled.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Your vehicle color code is printed on a sticker on the front, left-hand side door jamb. Take your color code to your authorized dealer to make sure you get the correct color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner such as Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Always read the instructions before using cleaning products.

CLEANING THE ALLOY WHEELS

Note: Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.

Note: Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.

Note: Industrial-strength or heavy-duty cleaners in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period time.

Note: Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergents.

Note: If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs.

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

Vehicle Care

- Clean the wheels weekly using Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner. Apply using manufacturer's instructions.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

VEHICLE STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

We engineer and test all motor vehicles and their components for reliable, regular driving. Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve engine components.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminants which may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.
- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.

Fuel system

- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing your vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm that there are no cooling system leaks and that fluid is at the recommended level.

Vehicle Care

Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.
- If storing your vehicle for more than 30 days without recharging the battery, we recommend that you disconnect the battery cables to maintain battery charge for quick starting.

Note: *It is necessary to reset memory features if battery cables are disconnected.*

Brakes

- Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 25 ft (7.5 m) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

Removing Vehicle From Storage

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check under the hood for any foreign material that may have collected during storage such as mice or squirrel nests.
- Check the exhaust for any foreign material that may have collected during storage.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Drive your vehicle 15 ft (4.5 m) back and forth to remove rust build-up.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

Wheels and Tires

TIRE CARE

Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading



E142542

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A.**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or LT type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104 (c)(2).

U.S. Department of Transportation Tire quality grades: The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear 1 ½ times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Wheels and Tires

Traction AA A B C

WARNING



The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Temperature A B C

WARNING



The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under

the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Glossary of Tire Terminology

- **Tire label:** A label showing the original equipment tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.
- **Tire Identification Number:** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.
- **Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

Wheels and Tires

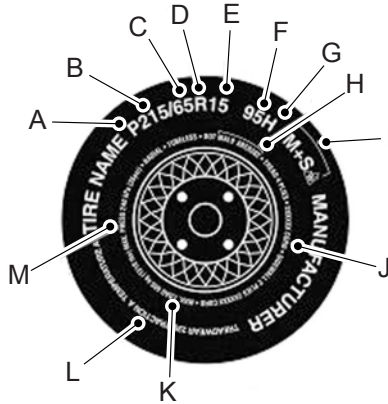
- **Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at set pressure. For example: For P-metric tires 35 psi (2.4 bar) or 36 (2.5 bar) depending on tire size and for Metric tires 36 psi (2.5 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 42 psi (2.9 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.
- **PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.
- **Cold tire pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mile (1.6 km).
- **Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.
- **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door
- **Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.
- **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.
- **Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.
- **Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

Wheels and Tires

Information on P Type Tires



E142543

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

A. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

B. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

D. **R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

F. **95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

G. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

Wheels and Tires

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Letter rating	mph (km/h)
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)

Letter rating	mph (km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

Note: For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

H. U.S. DOT Tire Identification

Number: This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501

means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

I. **M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

AT: All Terrain, or

AS: All Season.

J. Tire Ply Composition and

Material Used: Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

Wheels and Tires

K. **Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. See the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

L. **Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:**



Information Provided by:
DEALER
E - P - R - E - S - S

Wheels and Tires

- **Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
- **Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.
- **Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a

specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

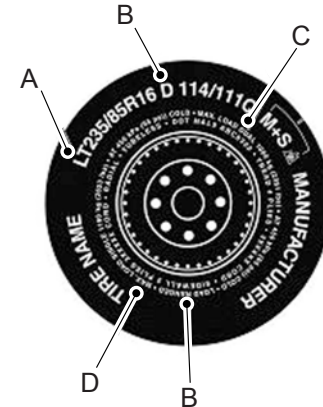
M. Maximum Inflation Pressure:

Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the vehicle manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load or radial tubeless.

Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires

Note: *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



E142544

LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

Wheels and Tires

A. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. **Load Range and Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

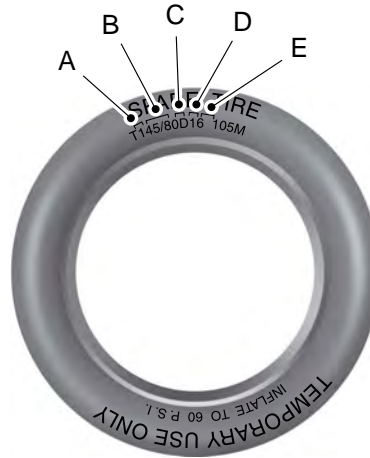
C. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual; defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

D. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single; defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

Information on T Type Tires

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

Note: *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



E142545

T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below:

A. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

B. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. **D:** Indicates a diagonal type tire.

R: Indicates a radial type tire.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
271

Wheels and Tires

E. 16: Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

Location of the Tire Label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.

Inflating Your Tires

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns

WARNING



Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch



Information Provided by:

272 DEALER

Wheels and Tires

post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles

Maximum Inflation Pressure is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the

B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10°F (6°C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

Note: *If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (for example driven more than 1 mile [1.6 kilometers]), never bleed or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.*

Note: *If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.*

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.
3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

Wheels and Tires

Note: If you overfill the tire, release air by pressing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.

4. Replace the valve cap.
5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

Note: Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T type mini-spare tires, see the Dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly information for a description. Store and maintain at 60 psi (4.15 bar). For full-size and dissimilar spare tires, see the Dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly information for a description. Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.

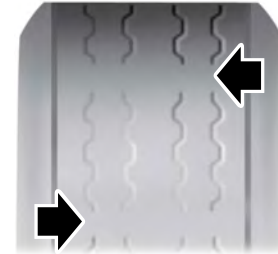
7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

Inspecting Your Tires and Wheel Valve Stems

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

Tire Wear



E142546

Wheels and Tires

When the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 millimeters), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 millimeters).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

Age

WARNING



Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P - R - E - S - E - N - T

275

Wheels and Tires

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501

means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Tire Replacement Requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.

WARNINGS



Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or the Tire Label which is

WARNINGS

located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver's door. If this information is not found on these labels then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Wheels and Tires

WARNINGS



To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again

When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

1. Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
2. Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.

WARNINGS

3. Stand at a minimum of 12 feet (3.66 meters) away from the wheel and tire assembly.

4. Use both eye and ear protection.

For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.

Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 feet (3.66 meters) away from the wheel and tire assembly

Important: Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, your system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

Safety Practices

WARNINGS



If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.

Wheels and Tires

WARNINGS



Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

- Observe posted speed limits
- Avoid fast starts, stops and turns
- Avoid potholes and objects on the road
- Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking

Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there is always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove the wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel (if provided). If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you're driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front-wheel drive vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

Tire Rotation

Note: *If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.*

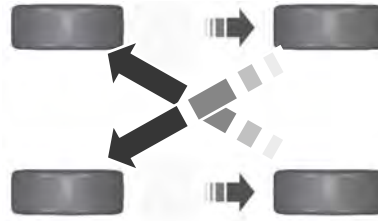
Wheels and Tires

Note: Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly. A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

Note: After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the Scheduled Maintenance chapter) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Front-wheel drive and all-wheel drive vehicles (front tires on the left side of the diagram)



E142547

Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

USING SNOW CHAINS

WARNINGS



If you choose to install snow tires on your vehicle, they must be the same size, construction, and load range as the original tires listed on the tire placard, and they must be installed on all four wheels. Mixing tires of different size or construction on your vehicle can adversely affect your vehicle's handling and braking, and may lead to loss of vehicle control.

WARNINGS



Do not use snow chains or cables on this vehicle as they may cause damage to your vehicle which may lead to loss of vehicle control.

Snow chains have not been approved for use on your vehicle.

The original equipment tires on your vehicle may have an all-weather tread design to provide traction, handling, and braking performance in year-round driving. You may install snow tires for improved traction when driving in areas with sustained periods of snow or icy driving conditions.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

WARNING



The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressure. The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using a tire gauge, see Inflating your tires in this chapter. Failure to properly maintain your tire pressure could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



Information Provided by:

DEALER

279

Wheels and Tires



Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

The tire pressure monitoring system complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System



E142549

Wheels and Tires

Note: Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor

You should always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

Check the tire pressure periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge. See Inflating Your Tires in this chapter.

Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. The low tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked.

When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the system will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel and tire assembly needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

To restore the full function of the tire pressure monitoring system, have the damaged road wheel and tire assembly repaired and remounted on your vehicle.

When You Believe Your System is Not Operating Properly

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. See the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

Wheels and Tires

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Solid warning light	Tire(s) under-inflated	Make sure tires are at the proper pressure. See Inflating your tires in this chapter. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see When your temporary spare tire is installed in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Flashing warning light	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see When your temporary spare tire is installed in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Wheels and Tires

When Inflating Your Tires

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure

How Temperature Affects Your Tire Pressure

The tire pressure monitoring system monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase about 2 to 4 psi (14 to 28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease about 3 psi (21 kPa) for a drop of 30°F (17°C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the tire pressure monitoring system as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the system warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. If one or

more tires are flat, repair as necessary. Check the air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

WARNINGS



The use of tire sealant may damage your tire pressure monitoring system and should only be used in roadside emergencies. If you must use a sealant, the Ford Tire Mobility Kit sealant should be used. The tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel must be replaced by an authorized dealer after use of the sealant.



If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 279).

Note: *The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light will illuminate when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.*

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensors. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 279). Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the tire pressure monitoring system sensor for damage.

Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information

WARNING



Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

Wheels and Tires

If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road wheel and tire assembly that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. **T-type mini-spare:** This spare tire begins with the letter T for tire size and may have Temporary Use Only molded in the sidewall.

2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: THIS WHEEL AND TIRE ASSEMBLY FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY.

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, **do not:**

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h)
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label.
- Tow a trailer.

- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire.
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire.

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability (if applicable).

3. Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, **do not:**

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h).
- Use more than one dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly at a time.

- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability (if applicable).
- Load leveling adjustment (if applicable).

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly additional caution should be given to:


- Towing a trailer.
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body.
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack.


Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly and seek service as soon as possible.


Wheels and Tires


Tire Change Procedure

WARNINGS


 When one of the front wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent the vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if the transmission is in park **(P)**.

 To help prevent the vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure to place the transmission in park **(P)**, set the parking brake and block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite (other side and end of the vehicle) to the tire being changed.

 Never get underneath a vehicle that is supported only by a jack. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.

 Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

WARNINGS

 Always use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle. If using a jack other than the one provided as original equipment with your vehicle, make sure the jack capacity is adequate for the vehicle weight, including any vehicle cargo or modifications.

1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Place the transmission in park **(P)** and turn the engine off.



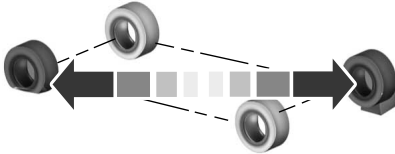
E173211

3. Lift the trunk cargo cover, and remove the wing nut that secures the spare tire by turning it counterclockwise.
4. Lift and remove the spare tire from the trunk.

Wheels and Tires

5. Remove the second wing nut that secures the jack retention bracket by turning it counterclockwise. Then remove the jack kit from your vehicle.
6. Remove the jack and the wrench from the felt bag. Fold down the wrench socket used to loosen the lug nuts and to operate the jack.

Vehicle Jacking



E142551

1. Block the diagonally opposite wheel.
2. If your vehicle has wheel covers, remove them with the lug wrench tip and loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise. Do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

3. The vehicle jacking points are shown here, and are depicted on the warning label on the jack.



E145908

Note: Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.

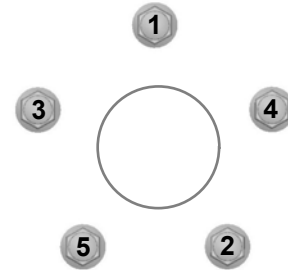
4. Small arrow-shaped marks on the sills show the location of the jacking points.



E142553

5. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

6. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.
7. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.



E75442

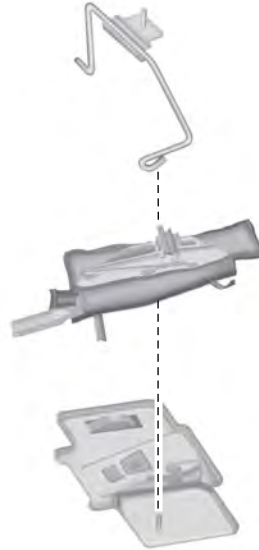
8. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. See **Technical Specifications** (page 288).

Wheels and Tires

9. Put the flat tire, jack and lug wrench away. Make sure the jack is fastened so it does not rattle when you drive. Unblock the wheels.

Stowing the flat tire

1. Remove the extension bolt from the exterior pocket of the felt bag.



E173212

2. Insert the straight end of the jack retention bracket through the eyelet of the angled bracket and swing the retention bracket over the jack. With the jack in place, place the end of the retention bracket over the threaded stud in the trunk floor and secure it with the plastic wing nut.
3. Screw the extension bolt onto the threaded stud of the jack retention bracket.



E173213

4. Place the flat tire in the spare tire well with the wheel facing up.
5. Safely secure the wheel by screwing the large wing nut onto the extension bolt.

Note: If you are stowing the temporary spare tire, place the tire over the jack and secure it with the large wing nut.



Information Provided by:


287
DEALER

Wheels and Tires

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Wheel Lug Nut Torque Specifications

WARNING

 When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

Bolt size	lb-ft (Nm)*
1/2 x 20	100 (135)

*Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 miles (160 kilometers) after any wheel disturbance (such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal).

Wheels and Tires



E145950

A Wheel pilot bore

Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P - R - E - S - S

289

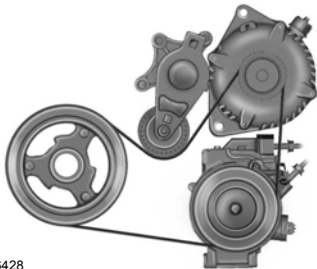
Capacities and Specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS

Engine	3.5L V6 Ecoboost	3.7 V6
Cubic inches	214	226
Required fuel	Minimum 87 octane	Minimum 87 octane
Firing order	1-4-2-5-3-6	1-4-2-5-3-6
Ignition system	Coil on plug	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap	.030-.033 in. (.75-.85 mm)	.049-.053 in. (1.25-1.35 mm)
Compression ratio	10.0:1	10.5:1

Drivebelt Routing

3.5L and 3.7L V6 Ecoboost Engines with A/C



E146428



Information Provided by:

290

DEALER

Capacities and Specifications

MOTORCRAFT PARTS

Component	3.5L V6 Ecoboost	3.7L V6 engine
Air filter element	FA-1884	FA-1884
Oil filter	FL-500-S	FL-500-S
Battery	BXT-65-650	BXT-65-650
Spark plugs	SP-534/CYFS-12-YT3	SP-520/CYFS-12F-5
Windshield wiper blade	WW-2601-PF (driver side) WW-2001-PF (passenger side)	
Cabin air filter	FP68	FP68
Seat air filter	FS-104	FS-104

We recommend Motorcraft replacement parts available at your Ford dealer or at fordparts.com for scheduled maintenance. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications and are engineered for your vehicle. Use of other parts may impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty may be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that meets industry performance specification SAE/USCAR-36.

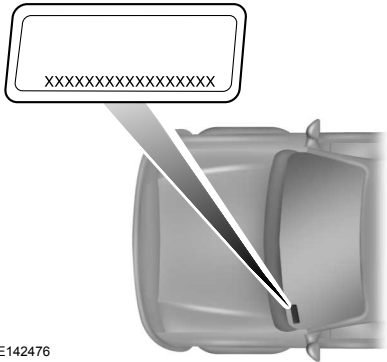
For spark plug replacement, contact an authorized dealer. Replace the spark plugs at the appropriate intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 392).

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

The vehicle identification number is located on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



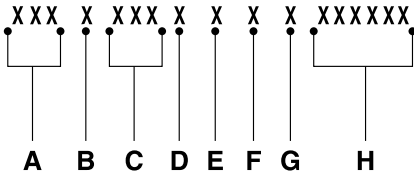
Capacities and Specifications



E142476

Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.

The Vehicle Identification Number contains the following information:



E142477

- A World manufacturer identifier
- B Brake system, Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, Restraint Devices and their locations
- C Make, vehicle line, series, body type
- D Engine type
- E Check digit
- F Model year
- G Assembly plant
- H Production sequence number

VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.			
DATE: XX/XX	GVWR: XXXX KG (XXXX LB)		
FRONT GAWR: XXXX KG (XXXX LB)	WITH TIRES XXXXXXXXXX	REAR GAWR: XXXX KG (XXXX LB)	WITH TIRES XXXXXXXXXX
AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD	RIMS XXXXXX	AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD	RIMS XXXXXX
THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.			
VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX			XXXXX
TYPE: XXXX			XXXXX
EXT PNT: XX	XXXXX	RC: XX	DSO: XXXX
WB	INT TR	TP/PS	R AXLE
XXX	XX	XXX X	XX X
XXXXXXXXXXXXXX		XXX	XXXX-XXXXXX-XX

E167469

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, the door latch post, or the edge of the door near the door latch, next to the driver's seating position.

Capacities and Specifications

TRANSMISSION CODE DESIGNATION

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.

DATE: XX/XX

GVWR: XXXX KG (XXXX LB)

FRONT GAWR: XXXX KG (XXXX LB)

WITH TIRES XXXX KG (XXXX LB)

WITH TIRES XXXX KG (XXXX LB)

XXXXXX

RIMS XXXXXX

RIMS XXXXXX

AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD


AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

XXXXX
XXXXX

TYPE: XXXX



EXT PNT: XX

XXXXXX

RC: XY

D50: XXXX

WB INT TR

TP/PS

R AXLE

TR

SPR

XXXX

XXX

XX

XXX

X

XX

X

XXXX

XXXX

XXXXXXXXXXXX

XX

XXXX-XXXXXXX-XX

The transmission code is on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table shows the transmission code along with the transmission description.

Description	Code
Six-speed automatic transmission (6F50)	J
Six-speed automatic transmission (6F55)	C



Capacities and Specifications

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

WARNING



The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant R-134a under high pressure. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury. Have the air conditioning refrigerant system serviced only by qualified personnel.

Item	Capacity	Recommended fluids and lubricants	Ford part number / Ford specification
Lock cylinders	—	Motorcraft Penetrating and Lock Lubricant (U.S.)	XL-1 (U.S.) / --
		Motorcraft Penetrating Fluid (Canada)	CXC-51-A (Canada) / --
Hinges, latches, striker plates, fuel filler door hinge and seat tracks	—	Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Grease Spray	XL-5
Brake fluid ¹	Between MIN/MAX on brake fluid reservoir	Motorcraft DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid	PM-20 / WSS-M6C65-A2
3.5L EcoBoost engine oil	6.0 qt (5.7 L)	Motorcraft SAE 5W-30 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil or Motorcraft SAE 5W-30 Full Synthetic Motor Oil	XO-5W30-QSP or XO-5W30-QFS (U.S.) / WSS-M2C946-A
			CXO-5W30-LSP12 or CXO-5W30-LFS12 (Canada) / WSS-M2C946-A



Information Provided by:

294 DEALER

Capacities and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Recommended fluids and lubricants	Ford part number / Ford specification
3.7L engine oil	6.0 qt (5.7 L)	Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil or Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Full Synthetic Motor Oil	XO-5W20-QSP or XO-5W20-QFS (U.S.) / WSS-M2C945-A
			CXO-5W20-LSP12 or CXO-5W20-LFS12 (Canada) / WSS-M2C945-A
3.5L EcoBoost engine coolant ²	11.4 qt (10.8 L)	Motorcraft Orange Antifreeze/Coolant Prediluted	VC-3DIL-B (U.S.) / WSS-M97B44-D2
			CVC-3DIL-B (Canada) / WSS-M97B44-D2
3.7L engine coolant ²	11.1 qt (10.5 L)	Motorcraft Orange Antifreeze/Coolant Prediluted	VC-3DIL-B (U.S.) / WSS-M97B44-D2
			CVC-3DIL-B (Canada) / WSS-M97B44-D2
Rear differential (AWD) fluid	2.4 pt (1.15L)	Motorcraft SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-80W90-QL (U.S.) / WSP-M2C197-A
			CXY-80W90-1L (Canada) / WSP-M2C197-A
Power Transfer Unit (PTU) fluid (AWD) ³	18 fl oz (0.53 L)	Motorcraft SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-75W140-QL / WSP-M2C197-A
3.5L EcoBoost engine Automatic transmission fluid ^{4,5}	11.6 qt (11 L)	Motorcraft MERCON LV	XT-10-QLVC (U.S.); CXT-10-LV12 (Canada) / MERCON LV
3.7L engine	10.9 qt (10.3 L)		

Capacities and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Recommended fluids and lubricants	Ford part number / Ford specification
Automatic transmission fluid 4.5			
Windshield washer fluid	Fill as required	Motorcraft Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant (U.S.)	ZC-32-B2 (U.S.) / WSS-M14P19-A
		Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid (Canada)	CXC-37-(A, B, D, and F) (Canada) / WSS-M14P19-A
Fuel tank	19.0 gal (71.9 L)	—	—
3.5L EcoBoost Engine A/C refrigerant	1.63 lb (0.74 kg)	Motorcraft R-134a Refrigerant	YN-19 (U.S.) / WSH-M17B19-A
			CYN-16-R (Canada) / WSH-M17B19-A
3.7L Engine A/C refrigerant	1.43 lb (0.65 kg)	Motorcraft R-134a Refrigerant	YN-19 (U.S.) / WSH-M17B19-A
			CYN-16-R (Canada) / WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant compressor oil	5.2 fl oz (153.8 ml)	Motorcraft PAG Refrigerant Compressor Oil	YN-12-D /



Information Provided by:

296

DEALER

Capacities and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Recommended fluids and lubricants	Ford part number / Ford specification
			WSH-M1C231-B

¹Ford recommends using DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid or equivalent meeting WSS-M6C65-A2. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause degraded brake performance and not meet the Ford performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.

²Add the coolant type originally equipped in your vehicle.

³Contact an authorized dealer for fluid level checking or filling.

⁴Make sure the correct automatic transmission fluid is used. Transmission fluid requirements are indicated on the dipstick blade or the dipstick handle. Before adding, check the container to verify the fluid is of the correct type. Refer to your scheduled maintenance information to determine the correct service interval.

Note: Automatic transmissions that require MERCON LV should only use MERCON LV fluid. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause transmission damage.

⁵Indicates only approximate dry-fill capacity. Some applications may vary based on cooler size and if equipped with an in-tank cooler. Use the indication on the dipstick, showing the normal operating range, to determine the amount of transmission fluid and the fluid level.

Use of synthetic or synthetic blend motor oil is not mandatory. Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications. Motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet API SN requirements and display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines are also acceptable. Do not use oil labeled with API SN service category unless the label also displays the API certification mark.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of the International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee (ILSAC):



Capacities and Specifications



E142732

Audio System

GENERAL INFORMATION

Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

- AM: 530, 540-1700, 1710 kHz
- FM: 87.9-107.7, 107.9 MHz

Radio Reception Factors	
Distance and strength	The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

CD and CD Player Information

Note: CD units play commercially pressed 4.75-inch (12 centimeter) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.

Note: Do not insert CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact an authorized dealer for further information.

Note: Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only. Wipe it from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods.

Audio System

MP3 Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 disc playback: MP3 track mode (system default) and MP3 folder mode.
- MP3 track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 disc. The player numbers each MP3 track on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.

- MP3 folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 tracks on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) and all folders containing MP3 files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than mp3), only files with the .mp3 extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all .mp3 files play, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the .mp3 files in the current folder.

AUDIO UNIT

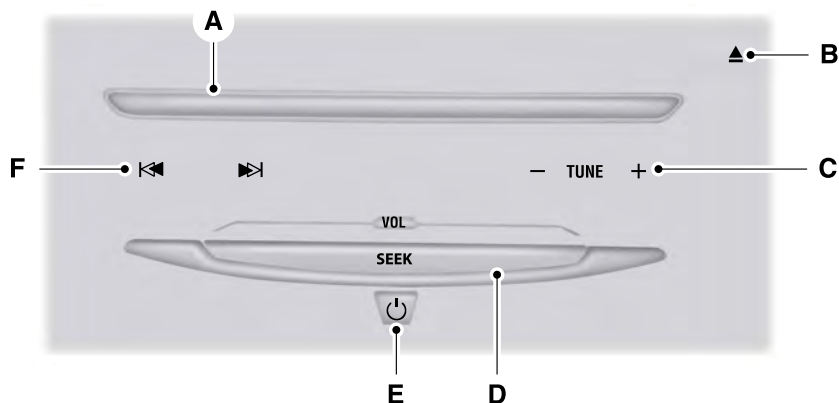
WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *The MyLincoln Touch system controls most of the audio features. See **Entertainment** (page 325).*

Audio System



E146318

- A **CD slot:** Insert a CD.
- B **Eject:** Eject a CD.
- C **TUNE +/-:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press one of the TUNE buttons. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In SIRIUS mode, select the previous or next channel. If a specific category is selected, (Jazz, Rock, News, etc.), use the TUNE buttons find to the previous or next channel in the selected category.
- D **Volume:** Tap either side of the slider, or slide your finger across the control to increase or decrease the volume level on the system. To slowly increase or decrease the volume level, press and hold either end of the slider.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P - R - E - S - S

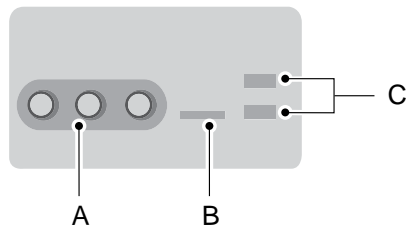
301

Audio System

- E **Power:** Switch the audio system on and off by pressing the button.
- F **Seek/Fast Forward/Reverse:** Press to go to the previous or next track or available radio station. Press and hold to either reverse or fast forward through the current track or to quickly reverse or advance through the radio band in individual increments.

MEDIA HUB

The media hub is located in the center console and has the following features:



E142605

- A A/V inputs
- B SD card slot
- C USB ports

See **Entertainment** (page 325).



Information Provided by:

302 DEALER

MyLincoln Touch™

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

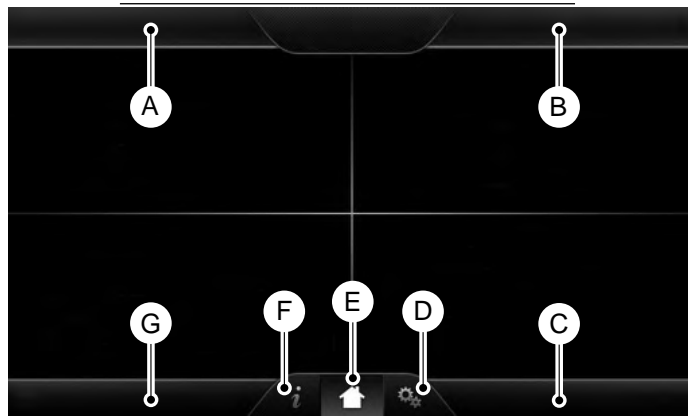


Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: You can also set up the certain convenience features using MyLincoln Mobile over the internet or smartphone application. For more information on MyLincoln Mobile, and to set up your MyLincoln Mobile account, visit:

Web Address

<http://support.lincoln.com/owner-services/mylincoln-mobile-app>



E161891



Information Provided by:

DEALER
303

MyLincoln Touch™

- A Phone.
- B Navigation (or Information if your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation).
- C Climate.
- D Settings.
- E Home.
- F Information.
- G Entertainment.

This system uses a four-corner strategy to provide quick access to several vehicle features and settings. The touchscreen provides easy interaction with your cellular phone, multimedia, climate control and navigation system. The corners display any active modes within those menus, such as phone status or the climate temperature.

Note: Some features are not available while your vehicle is moving.

Note: Your system is equipped with a feature that allows you to access and control audio features for 30 minutes after you switch the ignition off (and no doors open).

PHONE

Press to select any of the following:

- Phone.
- Quick Dial.
- Phonebook.
- History.
- Messaging.
- Settings.

NAVIGATION

Press to select any of the following:

- My Home.
- Favorites.
- Previous Destinations.
- Point of Interest.
- Emergency.
- Street Address.

- Intersection.
- City Center.
- Map.
- Edit Route.
- Cancel Route.

CLIMATE

Press to select any of the following:

- Driver Settings.
- Recirculated Air.
- Auto.
- Dual.
- Passenger Settings.
- A/C.
- Defrost.

MyLincoln Touch™



SETTINGS

Press to select any of the following:

- Clock.
- Display.
- Sound.
- Vehicle.
- Settings.
- Help.



HOME

Press to access your home screen. Depending on your vehicle's option package and software, your screens may vary in appearance from the descriptions in this section. Your features may also be limited depending on your market. Check with an authorized dealer for availability.



INFORMATION

Press to select any of the following:

- Services.
- Travel Link.
- Alerts.

- Calendar.
- Apps.

ENTERTAINMENT

Press to select any of the following:

- AM.
- FM.
- SIRIUS.
- CD.
- USB.
- BT Stereo.
- SD Card.
- A/V In.

Using the Touch-Sensitive Controls on Your System

To switch a feature on and off, just touch the graphic with your finger. To get the best performance from the touch-sensitive controls:

- Do not press hard on the controls. They are sensitive to light touch.
- Use your bare finger to touch the center of a touch-control graphic. Touching off-center of the graphic may affect operation of a nearby control.
- Make sure your hands are clean and dry.

- Since the touchscreen operates based on the touch of a finger, you may have trouble using it if you are wearing gloves.
- Keep metal and other conductive material away from the surface of the touchscreen as this may cause electronic interference (for example, inadvertently switching on a feature other than the one you meant to switch on).

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you may also have these controls on your bezel:

- **Power:** Switch the media or climate features off and on.
- **VOL:** Control the volume of playing media.
- **Seek** and **Tune** buttons: Use as you normally would in media modes.
- **Eject:** Eject a CD from the entertainment system.
- **Climate Control:** Control the temperature, fan speed or settings of the climate control system.

Using Your Steering Wheel Controls

You can use your steering wheel controls to interact with the touchscreen system.

MyLincoln Touch™

- **VOL:** Control the volume of audio output.
- **Seek:**
 - While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets or press and hold to seek between stations.
 - While in USB or CD mode, press to seek between stations or press and hold to fast seek.
- **Voice:** Press to start a voice session. Press again and hold to end a voice session.
- **Phone:** Press to answer a call or to switch between calls. Press and hold to end a call or to reject an incoming call.

See **Steering Wheel** (page 65).

Cleaning the Touchscreen Display

Use a clean, soft cloth such as one used for cleaning glasses. If dirt or fingerprints are still visible, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth. Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the display. Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the display.

Support

The SYNC support team is available to help you with any questions you are not able to answer on your own.

Monday-Saturday, 8:30am-9:00pm EST.

Sunday, 10:30am-7:30pm EST.

In the United States, call: 1-800-392-3673.

In Canada, call: 1-800-565-3673.

Times are subject to change due to holidays.

Safety Information

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury.

We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. Contact an authorized dealer.
- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's user guide for further information.
- For your safety, some SYNC functions are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle is traveling at speeds under 3 mph (5 km/h).

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.



Information Provided by:

306 DEALER

MyLincoln Touch™

Speed-restricted Features

Some features of this system may be too difficult to use while your vehicle is moving so they are restricted from use unless your vehicle is stationary.

- Screens crowded with information, such as Point of Interest reviews and ratings, SIRIUS Travel Link sports scores, movie

times or ski conditions.

- Any action that requires you to use a keyboard is restricted, such as entering a navigation destination or editing information.
- All lists are limited so the user can view fewer entries (such as phone contacts or recent phone call entries).

See the following chart for more specific examples.

Restricted features	
Cellular Phone	Pairing a Bluetooth phone
	Adding phonebook contacts or uploading phonebook contacts (from a USB)
	List entries are limited for phone contacts and recent phone call entries
System Functionality	Editing the keypad code
	Enabling Valet Mode
	Editing settings while the rear view camera or active park assist are active
Wi-Fi and Wireless	Editing wireless settings
	Editing the list of wireless networks
Videos, Photos and Graphics	Playing a video
	Editing the screen's wallpaper or adding new wallpaper
Text Messages	Composing text messages

MyLincoln Touch™

Restricted features	
	Viewing received text messages
	Editing preset text messages
Navigation	Using the keyboard to enter a destination
	Demo navigation route
	Adding or editing Address Book entries or Avoid Areas

Privacy Information

When you connect a cellular phone to SYNC, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that links to that cellular phone. This profile helps in offering you more cellular features and operating more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported

media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The system uses a log profile and other data to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cellular profile, media device index, and development log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information.

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's SYNC module. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access the system data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada. For further privacy information, see the sections on 911 Assist, Vehicle Health Report, and Traffic, Directions and Information.



MyLincoln Touch™

Accessing and Adjusting Modes through Your Vehicle Information Display



E173235

The display is located on the right side of your instrument cluster. It allows you to view and make minor adjustments to active modes without taking your hands off the wheel. For example:

- In Entertainment mode, you can view what is now playing, change the audio source (such as AM, FM and CD) and scroll through memory presets.
- In Phone mode, you can accept or reject an incoming call, or make a call by choosing from select menus within the Phone menu.
- If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, you can view the current route or cancel a route.

Note: *If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, Compass appears in the display instead of Navigation. If you press the right arrow to go into the Compass menu, you can see the compass graphic. The compass displays the direction in which the vehicle is traveling, not true direction (for example, if the vehicle is traveling west, the middle of the compass graphic displays west; north displays to the left of west though its true direction is to the right of west).*

Audio Sources and Memory Presets



E173236

Use the **OK** and arrow buttons on the right side of your steering wheel to scroll through the available modes.

MyLincoln Touch™

The selection menu expands and different options appear.

- Press the up and down arrows to scroll through the modes.
- Press the right arrow to enter the mode.
- Press the left or right arrows to make adjustments within the chosen mode.
- Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

Using Voice Recognition

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you. The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings).

The system also asks short questions (confirmation prompts) when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request.

When using voice commands, words and icons may appear in the lower left status bar indicating the status of the voice session (such as Listening, Success, Failed, Paused or Try Again).

How to Use Voice Commands with Your System



Press the voice icon. After the tone, speak your command clearly.

You can say these commands at any time during a voice session

"Cancel"
"Exit"
"Go back"
"List of commands"
"Main menu"
"Next page"
"Previous page"
"What can I say?"
"Help"

What Can I Say?

To access the available voice commands for the current session, do one of the following:

- During a voice session, press the help icon (?) in the lower left status bar of the screen.
- Say, "What can I say?" for an on-screen listing of the possible voice commands associated with your current voice session.
- Press the voice icon. After the tone, say, "Help" for an audible list of possible voice commands.

Helpful Hints

- Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.
- After pressing the voice icon, wait until after the tone sounds and Listening appears before saying a command. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.

MyLincoln Touch™

- Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.
- At any time, you can interrupt the system while it is speaking by pressing the voice icon.

Accessing a List of Available Commands

- If you use the touchscreen, press the Settings icon > **Help** > **Voice Command List**.
- If you use the steering wheel control, press the voice icon. After the tone, speak your command clearly.

Available voice commands
"Audio list of commands"
"Bluetooth audio list of commands"
"Browse list of commands"
"CD list of commands"
"Climate control list of commands"
"List of commands"
"Navigation list of commands" *
"Phone list of commands"

Available voice commands
"Radio list of commands"
"SD card list of commands"
"Sirius satellite list of commands" **
"Travel link list of commands" *
"USB list of commands"
"Voice instructions list of commands"
"Voice settings list of commands"
"Help"

* This command is only available when your vehicle is equipped with the navigation system, and the navigation system SD card is in the card slot.

** This command is only available when you have an active SIRIUS satellite radio subscription.

Voice Settings

Voice settings allow you to customize the level of system interaction, help and feedback. The system defaults to standard interaction that uses candidate lists and confirmation prompts as these provide the highest level of guidance and feedback.

- **Interaction Mode:** Novice mode provides detailed interaction and guidance while the advanced mode has less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
- **Confirmation Prompts:** The system uses these short questions to confirm your voice request. If switched off, the system simply makes a best guess as to what you requested. The system may still occasionally ask you to confirm settings.
- **Phone and Media Candidate Lists:** Candidate lists are lists of possible results from your voice commands. The system creates these lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice command.

To access these settings using the touchscreen:

1. Press the Settings icon > **Settings** > then **Voice Control**.
2. Select from the following:

MyLincoln Touch™

- Interaction Mode
- Confirmation Prompts
- Media Candidate Lists
- Phone Candidate Lists
- Voice Control Volume.

To access these settings using voice commands:

1. Press the voice icon. Wait for the prompt "Please say a command". Another tone sounds to let you know the system is listening.
2. Say any of the following commands:

Voice settings using voice commands
"Confirmation prompts off"
"Confirmation prompts on"
"Interaction mode advanced"
"Interaction mode novice"
"Media candidate lists off"
"Media candidate lists on"

Voice settings using voice commands
"Phone candidate lists off"
"Phone candidate lists on"
"Help"

Using Voice Commands with the Touchscreen Options

Your voice system has a dual mode feature which allows you to switch between using voice commands and making on-screen selections. This is available only when the system displays a list of candidates generated during a voice session. For example, when entering in a street address or trying to call a contact from the phone you paired to the system.

Privacy Notice for GPS Mapping with MyLincoln Mobile in the United States and Canada

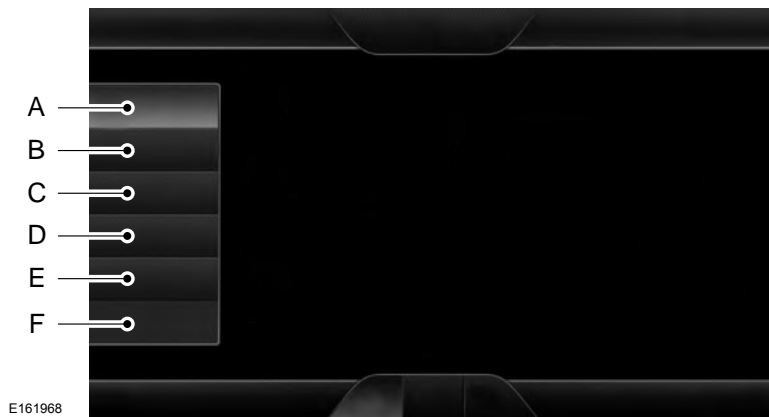
MyLincoln Mobile allows for GPS mapping when a vehicle is registered to a MyLincoln Mobile account. To remove the vehicle from the account, thereby removing GPS mapping ability, preform a Master Reset in the vehicle. See **Settings** (page 313).

Prior to transferring ownership of a vehicle, owners may choose to execute a Master Reset or Factory Reset (completed via the MyLincoln Mobile website). Either method removes the vehicle from all MyLincoln Mobile accounts.

we recommend that new owners conduct a Master Reset upon taking possession of the vehicle to remove it from any existing MyLincoln Mobile accounts. The new owner can activate a MyLincoln Mobile account by completing the registration process at:

Web Address
http://support.lincoln.com/owner-services/mylincoln-mobile-app .

SETTINGS



E161968

- A Clock.
- B Display.
- C Sound.
- D Vehicle.
- E Settings.
- F Help.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P - R - E - S - S

313

MyLincoln Touch™



Under this menu, you can set your clock, access and adjust the display, sound and vehicle settings as well as access settings for specific modes or the help feature.

Clock

Note: You cannot manually set the date. Your vehicle's GPS does this for you.

Note: If the battery has been disconnected, your vehicle needs to acquire a GPS signal to update the clock. Once your vehicle acquires the signal, it may take a few minutes for the update to display the correct time.



1. Press the Settings icon > **Clock**.
2. Press **+** and **-** to adjust the time.

From this screen, you can also make other adjustments such as 12-hour or 24-hour mode, activate GPS time synchronization and have the system automatically update new time zones.

You can also switch the outside air temperature display off and on. It appears at the top center of the touchscreen, next to the time and date.

The system automatically saves any updates you make to the settings.

Display

You can adjust the touchscreen display through the touchscreen or by pressing the voice button on your steering wheel controls and when prompted, say, "Display settings".



Press the Settings icon > **Display**, to access and make adjustments using the touchscreen.

- **Brightness** allows you to make the screen display brighter or dimmer.
- **Auto DIM**, when set to **On**, lets you use the Auto Dim Manual Offset feature. When set to **Off**, screen brightness does not change.
- **Mode** allows you to set the screen to a certain brightness or have the system automatically change based on the outside light level, or switch the display off.
 - If you select **AUTO** or **NIGHT**, you have the options of switching the display's Auto Dim feature on or off and changing the Auto Dim Manual Offset feature.

- **Auto Dim Manual Offset** allows you to adjust screen dimming as the outside lighting conditions change from day to night. This feature also allows you to adjust screen brightness using the instrument panel dimming control.
- **Edit Wallpaper**
 - You can have your touchscreen display the default photo or upload your own.

Uploading Photos for Your Home Screen Wallpaper

Note: You cannot load photos directly from your camera. You must access the photos either from your USB mass storage device or from an SD card.

Note: Photographs with extremely large dimensions (such as 2048 x 1536) may not be compatible and appear as a blank (black) image on the display.

Your system allows you to upload and view up to 32 photos.



To access, press the Settings icon > **Display** > **Edit Wallpaper**, and then follow the system prompts to upload your photographs.

MyLincoln Touch™

Only photographs that meet the following conditions display:

- Compatible file formats are as follows: jpg, gif, png, bmp
- Each file must be 1.5 MB or less.
- Recommended dimensions: 800 x 384.

Sound



Press the **Settings** icon > **Sound**, then select from the following:

Sound
Bass
Midrange
Treble
Set Balance and Fade
DSP*
THX Deep Note Demo*

Sound
Occupancy Mode*
Speed Compensated Volume

* Your vehicle may not have these sound settings.

Vehicle



Press the Settings icon > **Vehicle**, then select from the following:

- Ambient Lighting.
- Vehicle Health Report.
- Camera Settings.
- Enable Valet Mode.

Ambient Lighting (If Equipped)

When you switch this feature on, ambient lighting illuminates footwells and cupholders with a choice of colors. To access and make adjustments:



1. Press the Settings icon > **Vehicle** > **Ambient Lighting**.

2. Touch the desired color.
3. Use the scroll bar to increase or decrease the intensity.

To switch the feature on or off, press the power button.

Vehicle Health Report

Switch **Automatic Reminders** on and off and set the mileage interval at which you would like to receive the reports. Press **?** for more information on these selections.

When done making your selections, press **Run Vehicle Health Report Now** if you want your report.

You can find more information on Vehicle Health Report in this chapter. See **Information** (page 351).

Camera Settings

This menu allows you to access settings for your camera settings.



Press the Settings icon > **Vehicle** > **Camera Settings**, then select from the following settings:

- Enhanced Park Aids.
- Rear Camera Delay.

MyLincoln Touch™

You can find more information on the rear view camera in another chapter. See **Rear View Camera** (page 160).

Enable Valet Mode

Valet mode allows you to lock the system. No information is accessible until the system is unlocked with the correct PIN. You can create your own four-digit PIN to lock and unlock the system.



1. Press the Settings icon > **Vehicle** > **Enable Valet Mode**.
2. Enter a four-digit PIN twice, as prompted.

After you press **Continue**, the system locks until you enter the PIN again.

Note: *If the system locks, and you need to reset the PIN, enter 3681 and the system unlocks.*

Settings

Access and adjust system settings, voice features, as well as phone, navigation and wireless settings.

System



Press the Settings icon > **Settings** > **System**, then select from the following:

System	
Language	Select to have the touchscreen display in English, Spanish or French.
Distance	Select to display units in kilometers or miles.
Temperature	Select to display units in Celsius or Fahrenheit.
System Prompt Volume	Adjust the volume of voice prompts from the system.
Touch Screen Button Beep	Select to have the system beep to confirm choices made through the touchscreen.
Touch Panel Button Beep	Select to have the system beep to confirm button choices made through the climate or audio system.
Keyboard Layout	Have the touchscreen keyboard display in QWERTY or ABC format.
Install Applications	Install any downloaded applications or view the current software licenses.
Master Reset	Select to restore factory defaults. This erases all personal settings and personal data.

MyLincoln Touch™

Voice Control



Press the Settings icon > **Settings**
> **Voice Control**, then select from
the following:

Voice control	
Interaction Mode	Standard interaction mode provides more detailed interaction and guidance. Advanced mode has less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
Confirmation Prompts	Have the system ask you short questions if it has not clearly heard or understood your request.*
Media Candidate Lists	Candidate lists are possible results from your voice commands. The system simply makes a best guess at your request with these switched off.
Phone Candidate Lists	Candidate lists are possible results from your voice commands. The system simply makes a best guess at your request with these switched off.
Voice Control Volume	This allows you to adjust the system's voice volume level.

* Even with confirmation prompts switched off, the system may occasionally ask you to confirm settings.

Media Player



Press the Settings icon > **Settings**
> **Media Player**, then select from
the following:

MyLincoln Touch™

Media player	
Autoplay	When this feature is on, the system automatically switches to the media source upon initial connection. This allows you to listen to music during the indexing process. When this feature is off, the system does not automatically switch to the inserted media source.
Bluetooth Devices	Select to connect, disconnect, add or delete a device. You can also set a device as your favorite so that the system automatically attempts to connect to that device at every ignition cycle.
Index Bluetooth Audio Devices	When this feature is on, the system automatically indexes media on your connected Bluetooth device.
Gracenote Database Info	This allows you to view the version level of the Gracenote Database.
Gracenote Management	With this feature on, the Gracenote Database supplies metadata information for your music files. This overrides information from your device. This feature defaults to off.
Cover Art Priority	With this feature on, the Gracenote Database supplies cover art for your music files. This overrides any art from your device. This feature defaults to Media Player.

Navigation



Press the Settings icon > **Settings**
> **Navigation**, then select from the following:



Information Provided by:
DEALER
318
PROCESS

MyLincoln Touch™

Navigation	
Map Preferences	Switch breadcrumbs on and off.
	Have the system display your turn list top to bottom or bottom to top.
	Switch the Parking POI notification on and off.
Route Preferences	Choose to have the system display the Shortest, Fastest or most Ecological route first. If you set Always Use Preferred Route to Yes , the system uses the selected route type to calculate only one route to the desired destination. Always Use Preferred Route bypasses route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on the preferred route setting. Eco Time Penalty allows you to select a low, medium or high cost for the calculated Eco Route. The higher the setting, the longer the time allotment is for the route.
	Have the system avoid freeways.
	Have the system avoid tollroads.
	Have the system avoid ferries or car trains.
	Have the system use HOV (high-occupancy vehicle) lanes.
Navigation Preferences	Have the system use guidance prompts.
	Have the system automatically fill in State/Province information.
Traffic Preferences	Have the system display areas where roadwork occurs.
	Have the system display incident icons.
	Have the system display areas where difficult driving conditions may occur.
	Have the system display areas where snow and ice on the road may occur.

MyLincoln Touch™

Navigation	
	Have the system display any smog alerts.
	Have the system display weather warnings.
	Have the system display where there may be reduced visibility.
	Have the system turn on your radio for traffic announcements.
	Have the system avoid traffic problems automatically.
	Switch traffic alert notifications on and off.
	Have the system display accident icons.
	Have the system display traffic jam icons.
	Have the system display closed roads.
Avoid Areas	Enter specific areas that you would like to avoid on planned navigation routes.

Phone



Press the Settings icon > **Settings**
> **Phone**, then select from the
following:

MyLincoln Touch™

Phone	
Bluetooth Devices	Connect, disconnect, add or delete a device, as well as save it as a favorite.
Bluetooth	Switch Bluetooth on and off.
Do Not Disturb	Have all calls go directly to your voice mail and not ring inside your vehicle. With this feature switched on, text message notifications are also suppressed and do not ring inside your vehicle.
911 Assist	Switch on or switch off the 911 Assist feature. See Information (page 351).
Phone Ringer	Select the type of notification for phone calls - ring tone, beep, text to speech, or have it be silent.
Text Message Notification	Select the type of notification for text messages - alert tone, beep, text to speech, or have it be silent.
Internet Data Connection	If compatible with your phone, you can adjust your internet data connection. Select to make your connection profile with the personal area network or to switch off your connection. You can also choose to adjust your settings or have the system always connect, never connect when roaming or query on connect. Press ? for more information.
Manage Phonebook	Access features, such as automatic phonebook download, re-download your phonebook, add contacts from your phone as well as delete or upload your phonebook.
Roaming Warning	Have the system alert you when in Roaming mode.

MyLincoln Touch™

Wireless & Internet

Your system has a Wi-Fi feature that creates a wireless network within your vehicle, thereby allowing other devices (such as personal computers or phones) in your vehicle to speak to each other, share files or

play games. Using this Wi-Fi feature, everyone in your vehicle can also gain access the internet if you have a USB mobile broadband connection inside your vehicle, your phone supports personal area networking and if you park outside a wireless hotspot.



Press the Settings icon > **Settings** > **Wireless & Internet**, then select from the following:

Wi-Fi	
Wi-Fi Settings	Wi-Fi Network (Client) Mode turns the Wi-Fi feature on and off in your vehicle. Make sure you switch it on for connectivity purposes.
	Choose a Wireless Network allows you to use a previously stored wireless network. You can categorize by alphabetical listing, priority and signal strength. You can also choose to search for a network, connect to a network, disconnect from a network, receive more information, prioritize a network or delete a network.
	Gateway (Access Point) Mode makes SYNC an access point for a phone or a computer when switched on. This forms the local area network within your vehicle for things such as, game playing, file transfer and internet browsing. Press ? for more information.
	Gateway (Access Point) Settings allows you to view and change settings for using SYNC as the internet gateway.
	Gateway (Access Point) Device List allows you to view recent connections to your Wi-Fi system.



Information Provided by:

322
DEALER

MyLincoln Touch™

Wi-Fi	
USB Mobile Broadband	Instead of using Wi-Fi, your system can also use a USB mobile broadband connection to access the internet. (You must switch on your mobile broadband device on your personal computer before connecting it to the system.) This screen allows you to set up what is your typical area for your USB mobile broadband connection. (USB mobile broadband settings may not display if the device is already on.) You can select the following: Country, Carrier, Phone Number, User Name and Password.
Bluetooth Settings	Shows you the currently paired devices as well as giving you your typical Bluetooth options to connect, disconnect, set as favorite, delete and add device. Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG.
Prioritize Connection Methods	Choose your connection methods and change them as needed. You can select to Change Order and have the system either always attempt to connect using a USB mobile broadband or using Wi-Fi.



The Wi-Fi
CERTIFIED
Logo is a

Help



Press the Settings icon > **Help**, then select from the following:

E142626

certification mark of the Wi-Fi Alliance.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P - R - E - S - S

323

MyLincoln Touch™

Help	
Where Am I?	View your vehicle's current location if your vehicle is equipped with navigation. If your vehicle is not equipped with navigation, you do not see this button.
System Information	Touchscreen system serial number
	Your vehicle identification number (VIN)
	Touchscreen system software version
	Navigation system version
	Map database version
	Sirius satellite radio ESN
	Gracenote Database Information and Library version
Software Licenses	View the licenses for any software and applications installed on your system.
Driving Restrictions	Certain features are not accessible when your vehicle is moving.
911 Assist	Switch on and switch off the 911 Assist feature. See Information (page 351). In Case of Emergency (ICE) Quick Dial: allows you to save up to two numbers as ICE contacts for quick access if there is an emergency. Select Edit to access your phonebook and then select the desired contacts. The numbers then appear as options on this screen for the ICE 1 and ICE 2 buttons. The ICE contacts you select appear at the end of the 911 Assist call process.
Voice Command List	View categorized lists of voice commands.

MyLincoln Touch™

To access Help using the voice commands, press the voice button, then, after the tone,

say "Help". The system provides allowable voice commands for the current mode.

ENTERTAINMENT



- A AM 1 and AM AST
- B FM 1, FM 2 and FM AST
- C SIRIUS
- D CD



Information Provided by:

DEALER
EXPRESS

325

MyLincoln Touch™

- E USB
- F Touch this button to scroll down for more options, such as SD Card, BT Stereo and A/V In
- G These buttons change with the media mode you are in.
- H Radio memory presets and CD controls.

Note: Some features may not be available in your area. Contact an authorized dealer for more information.

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

Browsing Device Content

When listening to audio on a device, you can browse through other devices without having to change sources. For example, if you are currently listening to audio on an SD card, you can browse all the artists that are stored on your USB device.



Press the voice icon on the steering wheel. When prompted, you can say:

"BROWSE" within devices
"Browse"*
"Browse <league> games"**
"Browse <Sirius category> channels"**
"Browse SD card"
"Browse Sirius channel guide"**
"Browse USB"
"Help"

* If you only say, "Browse", you can then say any commands in the following chart.

**This command is only usable if you have an active subscription to Sirius satellite radio.

"BROWSE"
"<League> Games"*
"<Sirius category> channels"*
"SD card"**
"Sirius Channel Guide"
"USB"**
"Help"

* This command is only usable if you have an active subscription to Sirius satellite radio.

** For more commands in SD card or USB mode, see the "SD Card and USB Port" section of this chapter.

MyLincoln Touch™

Your voice system allows you to change audio sources with a simple voice command. For example, if you are listening to music on a USB device, then want to switch to a satellite radio channel, simply press the voice button on the steering wheel controls and say the name of the Sirius station (such as, "the Highway"). The following voice commands are available at the top level of the voice session no matter which current audio source you are listening to (such as a USB device or Sirius satellite radio).

Note: *This is only available when your MyLincoln Touch system language is set to North American English.*

Sample commands
"<87.9-107.9>"
"<530-1710>"
"<Channel name>".
"AM <530-1710>"
"FM <87.9-107.9>"
"Play [album] <name>"**
"Play [artist] <name>"**

Sample commands
"Play [genre] <name>"**
"Play [playlist] <name>"**
"Play [song] <name>"**
"Play <name>"
"Play <name (song or album)> by <artist name>"
"Sirius <0-223>".
"Sports games".

* This command is only usable if you have an active subscription to Sirius satellite radio.

** The commands that have [] around the word means that the word is optional. For example, if you say, "Play Metallica", this is the same as the voice command, "Play [artist] <name>".

AM/FM Radio



Touch the **AM** or **FM** tab to listen to the radio.

To change between AM and FM presets, just touch the **AM** or **FM** tab.

Memory Presets

Save a station by pressing and holding one of the memory preset areas. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when finished.

HD Radio

Touch this button to turn HD Radio on. The light on the button illuminates when the feature is on. HD Radio allows you to receive radio broadcasts digitally, where available, providing free, crystal-clear sound. See HD Radio information later in this chapter.

Scan

Touch this button to go to the next strong AM or FM radio station. The light on the button illuminates when the feature is on.

Options

Sound Settings

Touch this button to adjust settings for:

- Bass
- Midrange
- Treble

MyLincoln Touch™

- Balance and Fade
- THX Deep Note Demo
- DSP (Digital Signal processing)
- Occupancy Mode
- Speed Compensated Volume.

Note: Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.

Set PTY for Seek/Scan

This allows you to select a category of music you would like to search for. You can then choose to either seek or scan for the stations playing that category.

RDS Text Display

This allows you to view the information broadcast by FM stations.

AST

AST (Autostore) allows you to have the system automatically store the six strongest stations in your current location.

TAG Button

This feature is available when HD Radio is on, and allows you to tag a song to download later. When you select On, **TAG** appears on-screen when HD Radio is active. You can touch **TAG** to save the information of the song that is playing. When you plug in your portable music player, the information transfers, if supported by your device. When you are connected to iTunes®, the tags appear to remind you of the songs you would like to download. See HD Radio information later in this chapter.

Direct Tune

Touch this button to enter the desired station number manually. Touch **Enter** when you are done.

HD Radio™ Information (If Available)

Note: HD Radio broadcasts are not available in all markets.

HD Radio technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio. Your system has a special receiver that allows it to receive digital broadcasts (where available) in addition to the analog broadcasts, it already receives. Digital broadcasts provide a better sound quality than analog broadcasts with free, crystal-clear audio and no static or distortion. For more information, and a guide to available stations and programming, please visit www.hdradio.com.

When HD Radio is on and you tune to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology, you may notice the following indicators on your screen:



E142616

The HD Radio logo either blinks when acquiring a digital station, and then stays solid when digital audio is playing, or is grey when acquiring a digital station, and then changes to orange when digital audio is playing. When this logo is available, you may also see Title and Artist fields on-screen.

MyLincoln Touch™

The multicast indicator appears in FM mode (only) if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The highlighted numbers signify available digital channels where new or different content is available. HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in analog and digital broadcasts. Other multicast stations (HD2 through HD7) are only available digitally.

TAG allows you to save a song to download later when you are on an acquired HD Radio station and the feature is on. To turn the feature on and use it:

1. Press **AM** or **FM** > **Options** > **TAG Button** > **On**.
2. When you hear a song you like, touch **TAG**.

3. The system automatically saves the song's information and transfers it to your portable music player (if supported) when you connect it to the system. The system automatically transfers the tag to your player (if already connected) and a pop-up confirms the transfer.
4. When you access iTunes with your portable music player, the tags appear to you as a reminder. The system allows you to tag up to approximately 100 songs. For a list of devices that support tagging, see www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

When HD Radio broadcasts are active, you can access the following functions:

- **Scan** allows you to hear a brief sampling of all available stations. This feature still works when HD Radio reception is on, although it does not scan for HD2-HD7 channels. You may see the HD logo appear if the station has a digital broadcast.
- **Memory presets** allow you to save an active channel as a memory preset. Touch and hold a memory preset slot until the sound returns. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when finished. When switching to an HD2 or HD3 memory preset, the sound mutes before the digital audio plays, because the system has to reacquire the digital signal.

Note: As with any saved radio station, you cannot access the saved station if your vehicle is outside the station's reception area.



Information Provided by:

DEALER
E - P - R - E - S - S

329

MyLincoln Touch™

HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting

Potential reception issues	
Reception area	If you are listening to a multicast station and you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station may mute due to weak signal strength.
	If you are listening to HD1, the system switches back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. However, if you are listening to any of the possible HD2-HD7 multicast channels, the station mutes and stays muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.
Station blending	When the system first receives a station (aside from HD2-HD7 multicast stations), it first plays the station in the analog version. Once the receiver verifies the station is an HD Radio station, it shifts to the digital version. Depending on the station quality, you may hear a slight sound change when the station changes from analog to digital. Blending is the shift from analog to digital sound or digital back to analog sound.

In order to provide the best possible experience, use the contact form to report any station issues found while listening to a station broadcasting with HD Radio technology. Independent entities own and operate each station. These stations are responsible for ensuring all audio streams and data fields are accurate.

MyLincoln Touch™

Potential station issues		
Issues	Cause	Action
Echo, stutter, skip or repeat in audio. Increase or decrease in audio volume.	This is poor time alignment by the radio broadcaster.	No action required. This is a broadcast issue.
Sound fading or blending in and out.	The radio is shifting between analog and digital audio.	No action required. The reception issue may clear up as you continue to drive.
There is an audio mute delay when selecting HD2 or HD3, multicast preset or Direct Tune .	The digital multicast is not available until the HD Radio broadcast is decoded. Once decoded, the audio is available.	No action required. This is normal behavior. Wait until the audio is available.
Cannot access HD2 or HD3 multicast channel when recalling a preset or from a direct tune.	The previously stored multicast preset or direct tune is not available in your current reception area.	No action required. The station is not available in your current location.
Text information does not match currently playing audio.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form at website listed below.*
There is no text information shown for currently selected frequency.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form at website listed below.*
HD2-HD7 stations not found when Scan is pressed.	Pressing Scan disables HD2-HD7 channel search.	No action required. This is normal behavior.

* http://www.ibiquity.com/automotive/report_radio_station_experiences

MyLincoln Touch™

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U.S. and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp. Ford Motor Company and iBiquity Digital Corp. are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

Radio Voice Commands



If you are listening to the radio, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands.

If you are not listening to the radio, press the voice button and, after the tone, say "Radio", then any of the following commands.

"RADIO"
"<87.9-107.9>"
"<87.9-107.9> HD" ¹
"<530-1710>"
"AM"

"RADIO"
"AM <530-1710>"
"AM autotset"
"AM autotset preset <#>"
"AM preset <#>"
"Browse" ²
"FM"
"FM <87.9-107.9>"
"FM <87.9-107.9> HD <#>" ¹
"FM autotset"
"FM autotset preset <#>"
"FM preset <#>"
"FM 1"
"FM 1 preset <#>"
"FM 2"
"FM 2 preset <#>"
"HD <#>" ¹
"Preset <#>"

"RADIO"
"Radio off"
"Radio on"
"Set PTY"
"Tune" ³
"Help"

¹ If available.

² If you have said "Browse", see the "Browse" chart later in this section.

³ If you have said "Tune", see the following "Tune" chart.

"TUNE"
"<530-1710>"
"<87.9-107.9>"
"<87.9-107.9> HD <#>" [*]
"AM"
"AM <530-1710>"
"AM autotset"

MyLincoln Touch™

"TUNE"
"AM autoset preset <#>"
"AM preset <#>"
"FM"
"FM <87.9-107.9>"
"FM <87.9-107.9> HD <#>""
"FM autoset"
"FM autoset preset <#>"
"FM preset <#>"
"FM 1"
"FM 1 preset <#>"
"FM 2"
"FM 2 preset <#>"
"HD <#>""
"Preset <#>"
"Help"

* If available.

Sirius® Satellite Radio (If Activated)



Press the lower left corner of the touchscreen, and then select the **SIRIUS** tab.

Memory Presets

Save a channel by pressing and holding one of the memory preset areas. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the channel. Sound returns when finished.

ALERT

Save the current song, artist, or team as a favorite. The system alerts you when it plays again on any channel.

Replay

Replay audio on the current channel. You can replay approximately 45 minutes of audio as long as you have remained tuned to the current station. Changing stations erases the previous audio.

While in replay mode:

- Press and release the seek buttons to hear the previous or next song.
- Press and hold the seek buttons to reverse or fast forward in the current track.

- Press play or pause to play or pause the audio.
- Press **Replay** to return to live audio if you have been using the feature to replay audio.

Scan

Touch this button to hear a brief sampling of channels.

Options

Touch this button to view and adjust various media settings.

Sound Settings

Touch this button to adjust settings for:

- Bass
- Midrange
- Treble
- Balance and Fade
- THX Deep Note Demo
- DSP (Digital Signal processing)
- Occupancy Mode
- Speed Compensated Volume.

Note: Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.



MyLincoln Touch™

Set Category for Seek/Scan

This allows you to select a category of music you would like to search for. You can then choose to either seek or scan for the stations playing that category.

Parental Lockout

This allows you to lock and unlock channels, change or reset your PIN or unlock all channels. To use this feature, you need your initial PIN, which is 1234.

Artist/Title/Team Alerts

This feature allows you to select Artists, Titles and Teams that you would like the system to alert you to when they are playing on other channels. Press Edit Alerts to delete or turn off alerts. You can also set all alerts to on or off. When an alert appears on the screen, you can choose to Tune to the channel, to Cancel the alert or to Disable Alerts. If you are listening to a sporting event, you can save your favorite teams so that the system can alert you when they are playing on a satellite radio channel.

Note: Sirius does not support the Alert feature on all channels. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for Alert feature variation.

Electronic Serial Number (ESN)

Sirius requires this number when communicating with you about your account.

Direct Tune

Touch this button to enter the desired satellite channel number manually. Touch **Enter** when you are done.

Browse

Touch this button to view a list of all available stations. Scroll to see more categories. Touch the station you want to listen to.

Touch **Skip** if you want to skip this channel.

Touch **Lock** if you do not want anyone to listen to this channel.

Touch **Title** or **Artist** to see song and artists on other stations.

Sirius Satellite Radio Information

Note: *Sirius reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.*



E142593

Sirius satellite radio is a subscription-based satellite radio service that broadcasts a variety of music, sports, news, weather, traffic and entertainment programming. Your factory-installed Sirius satellite radio system includes hardware and a limited subscription term that begins on the date of sale or lease of your vehicle. See an authorized dealer for availability.

For more information on extended subscription terms (a service fee is required), the online media player and a list of Sirius satellite radio channels, and other features, please visit www.siriusxm.com in the United States, www.sirius.ca in Canada, or call Sirius at 1-888-539-7474.

Note: *This receiver includes the eCos real-time operating system. eCos is published under the eCos License.*



MyLincoln Touch™

Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN)

You need your ESN to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. The ESN

is on the System Information Screen (SR ESN:XXXXXXXXXXXX). To access your ESN, touch the bottom left corner of the touchscreen. Touch **SIRIUS > Options**.

Sirius Satellite Radio Reception Factors and Troubleshooting

Potential reception issues	
Antenna obstructions	For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other materials as far away from the antenna as possible.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast-repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and the audio system may mute.
Satellite radio signal interference	Your display may show ACQUIRING... to indicate the interference and the audio system may mute.



MyLincoln Touch™

Troubleshooting tips		
Radio display	Cause	Action
Acquiring...	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
Sat Fault/Sirius System Failure.	There is an internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear shortly, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See an authorized dealer for service.
Invalid Channel.	The channel is no longer available.	Tune to another channel or choose another preset.
Unsubscribed Channel.	Your subscription does not include this channel.	Contact Sirius at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel, or tune to another channel.
No Signal.	The signal is lost from the Sirius satellite or Sirius tower to your vehicle antenna.	The signal is blocked. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
Updating.	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.
Call Sirius 1-888-539-7474.	Your satellite service is no longer available.	Contact Sirius at 1-888-539-7474 to resolve subscription issues.
None found. Check Channel Guide.	All the channels in the selected category are either skipped or locked.	Use the channel guide to turn off the Lock or Skip function on that station.
Subscription Updated.	Sirius has updated the channels available for your vehicle.	No action required.



MyLincoln Touch™

Sirius Satellite Radio Voice Commands



If you are listening to Sirius satellite radio, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands.

If you are not listening to Sirius satellite radio, press the voice button and, after the tone, say "Sirius", then any of the following commands.

"SIRIUS"
"<Channel name>"
"Preset <#>"
"SAT"
"SAT preset <#>"
"SAT 1"
"SAT 1 Preset <#>"
"SAT 2"
"SAT 2 preset <#>"
"SAT 3"
"SAT 3 preset <#>"

"SIRIUS"
"Sirius <0-223>"
"Sirius off"
"Sirius on"
"Sports game"
"Tune"
"Help"

* If you have said "Sports game", see the following "Sports game" chart.

** If you have said "Tune", see the following "Tune" chart.

"SPORTS GAME"
"Tune to the <college name> game"
"Tune to the <team city> game"
"Tune to the <team city> <team name> game"
"Tune to the <team name> game"
"Help"

"TUNE"
"<Channel Name>"
"Preset <#>"
"SAT"
"SAT 1"
"SAT 1 preset <#>"
"SAT 2"
"SAT 2 preset <#>"
"SAT 3"
"SAT 3 preset <#>"
"Sirius <0-223>"
"Help"

CD



Press the lower left corner of the touchscreen, and then select the **CD** tab.

You can also advance and reverse the current track or current folder, if applicable.



Information Provided by:
DEALER
337

MyLincoln Touch™

Repeat

Touch this button to repeat the currently playing track, all tracks on the disc or turn the feature off if already on.

Shuffle

Touch this button to play the tracks or entire albums in random order, or turn the feature off if already on.

Scan

Touch this button to hear a brief sampling of all available tracks.

More Info

Touch this button to see disc information.

Options

Sound Settings

Touch this button to adjust settings for:

- Bass
- Midrange
- Treble
- Balance and Fade
- THX Deep Note Demo
- DSP (Digital Signal processing)

- Occupancy Mode
- Speed Compensated Volume.

Note: *Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.*

Compression

Touch this button to turn the compression feature off and on.

Browse

Touch this button to look through all available CD tracks.

CD Voice Commands



If you are listening to a CD, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands.

If you are not listening to a CD, press the voice button and, after the tone, say "CD", then any of the following commands.

"CD"
"Pause"
"Play"
"Play next track"

"CD"
"Play previous track"
"Play track <1-512>"
"Repeat"
"Repeat folder"*
"Repeat off"
"Repeat track"
"Shuffle"
"Shuffle CD"*
"Shuffle folder"*
"Shuffle off"
"Help"

*This applies to WMA or MP3 files only.

SD Card Slot and USB Port

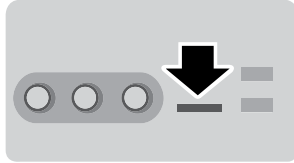
SD Card

Note: *Your SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, press the card in and the system ejects it. Do not attempt to pull the card to remove it as this could cause damage.*



MyLincoln Touch™

Note: The navigation system also uses this card slot. See **Navigation** (page 364).



E142619

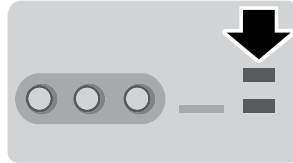
The SD card slot is located either in the center console or behind a small access door in the instrument panel. To access and play music from your device, press the lower left corner of the touchscreen.



E142620

logo is a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.

USB Port



E142621

The USB ports are located either in the center console or behind a small access door in the instrument panel. To access and play music from your device, press the lower left corner of the touchscreen.

This feature allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks, flash drives or thumb drives, and charge devices if they support this feature.

In order to playback video from your iPod or iPhone, you must have a special combination USB/RCA composite video cable (which you can buy from Apple). When you connect the cable to your iPod or iPhone, plug the other end into both the RCA jacks and the USB port.

Playing Music from Your Device

Note: The system is capable of indexing up to 30,000 songs.



Insert your device and select the **SD Card** or **USB** tab once the system recognizes it. You can then select from the following options:

Repeat

This feature replays the currently playing song or album.

Shuffle

Touch this button to play music on the selected album or folder in random order.

Similar Music

This feature allows you to choose music similar to what is currently playing.

More Info

Touch this button to see disc information such as current track, artist name, album and genre.

Options

Touch this button to view and adjust various media settings.

MyLincoln Touch™

Sound Settings allows you to adjust settings for:

- Bass
- Midrange
- Treble
- Balance and Fade
- THX Deep Note Demo
- DSP (Digital Signal processing)
- Occupancy Mode
- Speed Compensated Volume.

Note: Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.

Media Player Settings allows you to select more settings, which is under Media Player. See **Settings** (page 313).

Device Information displays software and firmware information about the currently connected media device.

Update Media Index indexes your device when you connect it for the first time and each time the content changes (such as adding or removing tracks) to make sure you have the latest voice commands available for all media on the device.

Browse

This feature allows you to view the contents of the device. It also allows you to search by categories, such as genre, artist or album.

If you want to view song information such as Title, Artist, File, Folder, Album, and Genre, touch the on-screen album art.

You can also touch **What's Playing** to hear how the system pronounces the current band and song. This can be helpful when using voice commands to make sure the system correctly plays your request.

Playing Video from Your Device

To access and play video from your device, your vehicle's transmission must be in position **P** with the ignition in accessory mode. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 126).

SD Card and USB Voice Commands



If you are listening to a USB device or an SD card, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands.

If you are not listening to a USB device or an SD card, press the voice button and, after the tone, say "USB" or "SD card", then any of the following commands.

"USB" or "SD CARD"
"Browse"
"Next"
"Pause"
"Play"
"Play album <name>"
"Play all"
"Play artist <name>"
"Play audiobook <name>"
"Play author <name>"
"Play composer <name>"
"Play folder <name>"
"Play genre <name>"
"Play movie <name>"**



MyLincoln Touch™

"USB" or "SD CARD"
"Play music video <name>"**
"Play playlist <name>"
"Play podcast <name>"
"Play podcast episode <name>"
"Play similar music"
"Play song <name>"
"Play TV show <name>"**
"Play TV show episode <name>"**
"Play video <name>"**
"Play video podcast <name>"**
"Play video podcast episode <name>"**
"Play video playlist <name>"**
"Previous"
"Repeat all"
"Repeat off"
"Repeat one"

"USB" or "SD CARD"
"Shuffle"
"Shuffle album"
"Shuffle off"
"What's this?"
"Help"

* If you have said you would like to browse your USB or SD card, the system prompts you to specify what you would like to browse. When prompted, see the following "Browse" chart.

** These commands are only available in USB mode and are device-dependent.

"BROWSE"
"Album <name>"
"All albums"
"All artists"
"All audiobooks"
"All authors"
"All composers"

"BROWSE"
"All folders"
"All genres"
"All movies"*
"All music videos"*
"All playlists"
"All podcasts"
"All songs"
"All TV shows"*
"All video playlists"*
"All video podcasts"*
"All videos"*
"Artist <name>"
"Audiobook <name>"
"Author <name>"
"Composer <name>"
"Folder <name>"

MyLincoln Touch™

"BROWSE"
"Genre <name>"
"Playlist <name>"
"Podcast <name>"
"TV show <name>"
"Video <name>"
"Video playlist <name>"
"Video podcast <name>"
"Help"

* This command is only available in USB mode and is device-dependent.

Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player, including iPod, Zune™, plays from device players, and most USB drives. Supported audio formats include MP3, WMA, WAV and AAC.

It is also able to organize your indexed media from your playing device by metadata tags. Metadata tags, which are descriptive software identifiers embedded in the media files, provide information about the file.

If your indexed media files contain no information embedded in these metadata tags, SYNC may classify the empty metadata tags as **Unknown**.

In order to playback video from your iPod or iPhone, you must have a special combination USB/RCA composite video cable (which you can buy from Apple). When you connect the cable to your iPod or iPhone, plug the other end into both the RCA jacks and the USB port.

Bluetooth Audio

Your system allows you to stream audio over your vehicle's speakers from your connected, Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone.



To access, press the lower left corner on the touchscreen, then select the **BT Stereo** tab.

Bluetooth Audio Voice Commands



If you are listening to a Bluetooth audio device, press the voice button on the steering wheel control. When prompted, say "Next song", "Pause", "Play" or "Previous song".

If you are not listening to a Bluetooth audio device, press the voice button and, after the tone, say "Next song", "Pause", "Play" or "Previous song".

A/V Inputs

WARNINGS



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury.

We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



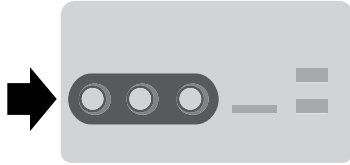
For safety reasons, do not connect or adjust the settings on your portable music player while your vehicle is moving.

MyLincoln Touch™

WARNINGS



Store the portable music player in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when your vehicle is moving. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while your vehicle is moving.



E142622

Your A/V inputs allow you to connect an auxiliary audio/video source (such as a gaming systems or a personal camcorder) by connecting RCA cords (not included) to these input jacks. The jacks are yellow, red and white and are located either behind a small access door on the instrument panel or in your center console.

You can also use the A/V inputs as an auxiliary input jack to play music from your portable music player over your vehicle's speakers. Plug in your 1/8 inch (3.5 millimeter) RCA adapter into the two left A/V input jacks (red and white).

Press the lower left corner of the touchscreen, and then select **A/V In**.

To use the auxiliary input jack feature, make sure that your portable music player is designed for use with headphones and that it is fully charged. You also need an audio extension cable with stereo male 1/8-inch (3.5 millimeter) connectors at one end and a RCA jack at the other.

1. Switch off the engine, radio and portable music player. Set the parking brake and put the transmission in position **P**.
2. Attach one end of the audio extension cable to the headphone output of your player and the other end into the adapter in one of the two left A/V input jacks (white or red) inside the center console.
3. Press the lower left corner on the touchscreen. Select either a tuned FM station or a CD (if there is a CD already loaded into the system).
4. Adjust the volume as desired.

5. Turn the portable music player on and adjust the volume to 1/2 the maximum.
6. Press the lower left corner on the touchscreen. Select the **A/V In** tab. (You should hear audio from your portable music player although it may be low.)
7. Adjust the sound on your portable music player until it reaches the level of the FM station or CD by switching back and forth between the controls.

In order to playback video from your iPod or iPhone, you must have a special combination USB/RCA composite video cable (which you can buy from Apple). When you connect the cable to your iPod or iPhone, plug the other end into both the RCA jacks and the USB port.

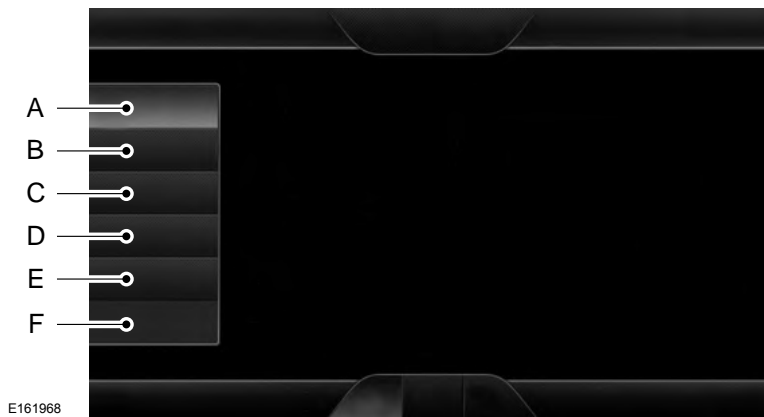
Troubleshooting

- Do not connect the audio input jack to a line level output. The jack only works correctly with devices that have a headphone output with a volume control.
- Do not set the portable music player's volume level higher than is necessary to match the volume of the CD or FM radio as this causes distortion and reduces sound quality.

MyLincoln Touch™

- If the music sounds distorted at lower listening levels, turn the portable music player volume down. If the problem persists, replace or recharge the batteries in the portable media player.
- Control the portable media player in the same manner when used with headphones, as the auxiliary input jack does not provide control (such as Play or Pause) over the attached portable media player.

PHONE



Information Provided by:

344
DEALER
PROCESS

MyLincoln Touch™

- A Phone
- B Quick Dial
- C Phonebook
- D History
- E Messaging
- F Settings

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. Once you pair your phone, you can access many options using the touchscreen or voice commands. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cellular phone's functionality.

At a minimum, most cellular phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Using privacy mode.
- Dialing a number.
- Redialing.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features. To check your phone's compatibility, see your device's manual and visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

Pairing Your Phone for the First Time

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The first thing you must do to use the phone features of SYNC is to pair your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone with SYNC. This allows you to use your phone in a hands-free manner.

MyLincoln Touch™

Note: Put the transmission in park (P). Switch on your vehicle ignition and the radio.

1. Touch **Add Phone** in the upper left corner of the touchscreen. **Find SYNC** appears on the screen, and instructs you to begin the pairing process from your device.
2. Make sure that Bluetooth is set to **On** and that your cellular phone is in the proper mode. See your device's manual if necessary.

Note: Select **SYNC**, and a six-digit PIN appears on your device.

3. If prompted to enter a PIN on your device, it does not support Secure Simple Pairing. To pair, enter the PIN displayed on the touchscreen. Skip the next step.
4. When prompted on your phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cellular phone.
5. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

SYNC may prompt you with more phone options. For more information on your phone's capability, see your device's manual and visit the website.

Pairing Subsequent Phones

Note: Put the transmission in park (P). Switch on your vehicle ignition and the radio.

1. Press the **Phone** corner of the touchscreen > **Settings** > **BT Devices** > **Add Device**.
2. Make sure that Bluetooth is set to **On** and that your cellular phone is in the proper mode. See your device's manual if necessary.

Note: Select **SYNC**, and a six-digit PIN appears on your device.

3. If prompted to enter a PIN on your device, it does not support Secure Simple Pairing. To pair, enter the PIN displayed on the touchscreen. Skip the next step.
4. When prompted on your phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cellular phone.
5. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

SYNC may prompt you with more phone options. For more information on your phone's capability, see your device's manual and visit the website.

Making Calls



Press the voice button on your steering wheel controls. When prompted, say, "Call <name>" or say "Dial", then the desired number.



To end the call or exit phone mode, press and hold this phone button on your steering wheel controls.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Call information appears in the display if it is available.



Accept the call by pressing **Accept** on the touchscreen or by pressing this phone button on your steering wheel controls.



Reject the call by pressing **Reject** on the touchscreen or by pressing and holding this phone button on your steering wheel controls.

Ignore the call by doing nothing. SYNC logs it as a missed call.

MyLincoln Touch™

Phone Menu Options

Press the top left corner on your touchscreen to select from the following options:

Phone

Touch this button to access the on-screen numerical pad to enter a number and place a call. During an active call, you can also choose to:

- Mute the call.
- Put the call on hold.
- Turn on the privacy feature.
- Join two calls.
- End the call.

Quick Dial

Set up favorite contacts from your phonebook or history folder.

Phonebook

Touch this button to access and call any contacts in your previously downloaded phone book. The system places the entries in alphabetical categories summarized at the top of the screen.

To switch on contact picture settings, if your device supports this feature, press **Phone > Settings > Manage Phonebook > Download photos from Phonebook > On.**

History

After you connect your Bluetooth-enabled phone to SYNC, you can access any previously dialed, received or missed calls. You can also choose to save these to your Favorites or to Quick Dial.

Note: *This is a phone-dependent feature. If your phone does not support downloading call history using Bluetooth, SYNC keeps track of calls made with the SYNC system.*

Messaging

Send text messages using your touchscreen. See **Text messaging** later in this section.

Settings

Touch this button to access various phone settings, such as turning Bluetooth on and off, managing your phonebook and more. See **Phone settings** later in this section.

Text Messaging

Note: *Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are phone-dependent features.*

Note: *Certain features in text messaging are speed-dependent and not available when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 3 mph (5 km/h).*

Note: *SYNC does not download read text messages from your phone.*

You can send and receive text messages using Bluetooth, read them aloud and translate text messaging acronyms, such as LOL.

1. Touch the top left corner of the display to access the **Phone** menu.
2. Select **Messaging**.
3. Choose from the following:
 - Listen (speaker icon).
 - Dial.
 - Send Text.
 - View.
 - Delete.

MyLincoln Touch™

Composing a Text Message

Note: This is a speed-dependent feature. It is unavailable when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 3 mph (5 km/h).

Note: Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are phone-dependent features.

1. Touch the top left corner of the display to access the **Phone** menu.
2. Touch **Messaging > Send Text**.
3. Enter a phone number or choose from your phonebook.
4. You can select from the following options:
 - **Send**, which sends the message as it is.
 - **Edit Text**, which allows you to customize the pre-defined message or create a message on your own.

You can then preview the message, verify the recipient as well as update the message list.

Text message options
I'll call you back in a few minutes.
I just left, I'll be there soon.
Can you give me a call?

Text message options
I'm on my way.
I'm running a few minutes late.
I'm ahead of schedule, so I'll be there early.
I'm outside.
I'll call you when I get there.
OK
Yes
No
Thanks
Stuck in traffic.
Call me later.
LOL

Receiving a Text Message

Note: If you select View and your vehicle is traveling over 3 mph (5 km/h), the system offers to read the message to you instead of allowing you to view it while driving.

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the screen displays a pop-up with the caller name and ID, if supported by your phone. You can press:

- **View** to view the text message.
- **Listen** for SYNC to read the message to you.
- **Dial** to call the contact.
- **Ignore** to exit the screen.

Phone Settings

Press **Phone > Settings**.

Bluetooth Devices

Touch this tab to connect, disconnect, add or delete a device, as well as save it as a favorite.

Bluetooth

Touch this tab to turn Bluetooth off or on.

Do Not Disturb

Touch this tab if you want all calls to go directly to your voice mail and not ring in the vehicle. When this feature is on, text message notifications do not ring inside the cabin either.

MyLincoln Touch™

911 Assist

Switch on or switch off the 911 Assist feature. See **Information** (page 351).

Phone Ringer

Select the ring tone you want to hear when you receive a call. Choose from possible system ring tones, your currently paired phone's ring tone, a beep, text-to-speech or a silent notification.

Text Message Notification

Select a text message notification, if supported by your phone. Choose from possible system alert tones, text-to-speech or silent.

Internet Data Connection

If your phone is compatible, use this screen to adjust your internet data connection. Select to make your connection profile with the personal area network or to switch off your connection. You can also choose to adjust your settings or have the system always connect, never connect when roaming or query on connect. Press **?** for more information.

Manage Phonebook

Touch this button to access features such as automatic phonebook download, re-download your phonebook, add contacts from your phone as well as delete or upload your phonebook.

Roaming Warning

Touch this button to have the system alert you when your phone is in roaming mode.

Phone Voice Commands



Press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands:

"PHONE"
"Call"
"Call <name>"
"Call <name> at home"
"Call <name> at work"
"Call <name> on cell"
"Call <name> on other"

"PHONE"
"Call voicemail"
"Dial"
"Do not disturb off"
"Do not disturb on"
"Forward text messages"
"Go to hands free"
"Hold call off"
"Hold on"
"Join calls"
"Listen to text message <#>"
"Listen to text messages"
"Messages"
"Mute call"
"Pair phone"
"Privacy on"
"Read text message"

MyLincoln Touch™

"PHONE"
"Reply to text messages"
"Turn ringer off"
"Turn ringer on"

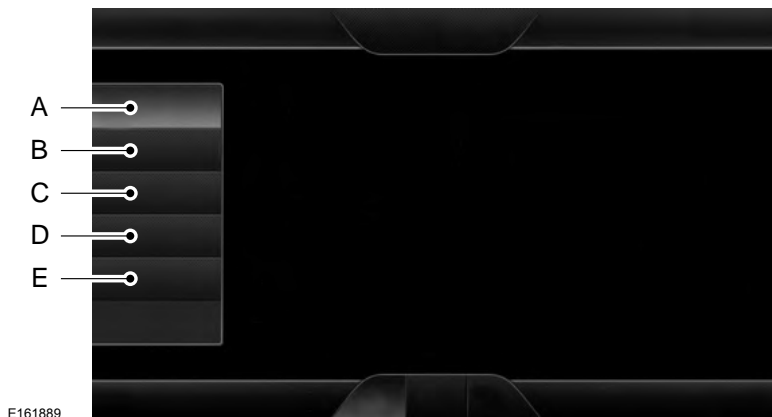
"PHONE"
"Unmute call"*
"Help"

* This command is only available during an active call.

** If you say "Messages", see the following "Messages" chart for additional commands.

"MESSAGES"
"Call"
"Forward text messages"
"Listen to text message <#>"
"Listen to text messages"
"Reply to text messages"
"Help"

INFORMATION



E161889

- A SYNC Services
- B Sirius Travel Link
- C Alerts
- D Calendar
- E SYNC Applications



Information Provided by:

DEALER
EXPERIENCES

351

MyLincoln Touch™

Under the Information menu, you can access features such as:

- SYNC Services
- Sirius Travel Link
- Alerts
- Calendar
- SYNC Applications



If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, press the **Information** button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, press the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

SYNC Services (If Equipped, United States Only)

Note: SYNC Services varies by trim level and model year and may require a subscription. Traffic alerts and turn-by-turn directions available in select markets. Message and data rates may apply. Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change or discontinue this product service at any time without prior notification or incurring any future obligation.

Note: SYNC Services requires activation before use. Visit www.SYNCMyRide.com to register and check your eligibility for complimentary services. Standard phone and message rates may apply. Subscription may be required. You must also have the active SYNC Services Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone paired and connected to the system in order to connect to, and use, SYNC Services. See **Phone** (page 344).

Note: This feature does not function properly if you have enabled caller ID blocking on your cellular phone. Make sure your cellular phone is not blocking caller ID before using SYNC Services.

Note: The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle, and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions. Any navigation features provided are only an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of errors, changes in roads, traffic conditions or driving conditions.

Note: When you connect, the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect your vehicle's current location, travel direction and speed to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches you request. Further, to provide the services you request, for continuous improvement, the service may collect and record call details and voice communications. For more information, see SYNC Services Terms and Conditions at www.SYNCMyRide.com. If you do not want Ford or its service providers to collect your vehicle travel information or other information identified in the Terms and Conditions, do not subscribe or use the service.

SYNC Services uses advanced vehicle sensors, integrated GPS technology and comprehensive map and traffic data, to give you personalized traffic reports, precise turn-by-turn directions, business search, news, sports, weather and more. For a complete list of services, or to learn more, please visit www.SYNCMyRide.com.

Connecting to SYNC Services Using Voice Commands



MyLincoln Touch™

1. Press the voice button.
2. When prompted, say "Services". This initiates an outgoing call to SYNC Services using your paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone.
3. Once you connect to the service, follow the voice prompts to request the desired service, such as "Traffic" or "Directions". You can also say, "What are my choices?" to receive a list of available services from which to choose.
4. Say, "Services" to return to the Services main menu or for help, say, "Help".

Connecting to SYNC Services Using the Touchscreen



If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, press the **Information** button.

If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, press the green tab on your touchscreen.

1. Select **Connect to Services** to initiate an outgoing call to SYNC Services using your phone.

2. Once connected, follow the voice prompts to request your desired Service, such as "Traffic" or "Directions". You can also say, "What are my choices?" to receive a list of available services from which to choose.
3. Say, "Services" to return to the Services main menu or for help, say, "Help".

Receiving Turn-by-Turn Directions

1. When connected to SYNC Services, say "Directions" or "Business search". To find the closest business or type of business to your current location, just say "Business search" and then "Search near me". If you need further assistance in finding a location you can say "Operator" at any time within a Directions or Business search to speak with a live operator. The system may prompt you to speak with an operator when it has difficulty matching your voice request. The live operator can assist you by searching for businesses by name or by category, residential addresses by street address or by name or specific street intersections. Operator Assist is a feature of your SYNC Services subscription. For more information on Operator Assist, visit www.SYNCMyRide.com/support.

2. Follow the voice prompts to select your Destination. After the route download is finished, the phone call automatically ends.

If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation:

- Turn-by-turn directions appear in the information display, in the status bar of your touchscreen system and on the SYNC Services screen. You also receive driving instructions from audible prompts.
- When on an active route, you can select **Route Summary** or **Route Status** using the touchscreen controls or voice commands to view the **Route Summary Turn List** or the **Route Status ETA**. You can also turn voice guidance on or off, cancel the route or update the route.

If you miss a turn, SYNC automatically asks if you want the route updated. Just say, "Yes" when prompted and the system delivers a new route to your vehicle.

If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, SYNC Services downloads your requested destination to the navigation system. The navigation system then calculates the route and provides driving instructions. See **Navigation** (page 364).

MyLincoln Touch™

Disconnecting from SYNC Services

1. Press and hold the hang-up phone button on the steering wheel.
2. Say "Good-bye" from the SYNC Services main menu.

SYNC Services quick tips	
Personalizing	You can personalize your Services feature to provide quicker access to your most used or favorite information. You can save address points, such as work or home. You can also save favorite information like sports teams, such as Detroit Lions, or a news category. You can learn more about personalization by logging onto www.SYNCMyRide.com .
Push to interrupt	Press the voice button at any time (while connected to SYNC Services) to interrupt a voice prompt or an audio clip (such as a sports report) and say your voice command.
Portable	Your subscription is associated with your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone number, not your VIN (Vehicle Identification Number). You can pair and connect your phone to any vehicle equipped with SYNC Services and continue enjoying your personalized services.

SYNC Services Voice Commands



When a route has been downloaded (non-navigation systems), press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands:

"SERVICES"
"Cancel route"
"Navigation voice off"
"Navigation voice on"
"Next turn"
"Route status"
"Route summary"

"SERVICES"
"Services"
"Update route"
"Help"

MyLincoln Touch™

Sirius Travel Link (If Equipped)

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: In order to use Sirius Travel Link, your vehicle must be equipped with navigation and your navigation SD card must be in the SD card slot.

Note: A paid subscription is required to access and use these features. Go to www.siriusxm.com/travellink for more information.

Note: Visit www.siriusxm.com/traffic# and click on Coverage map and details for a complete listing of all traffic areas covered by Sirius Travel Link.

Note: Neither Sirius nor Ford is responsible for any errors or inaccuracies in the Sirius Travel Link services or its use in vehicles.

When you subscribe to Sirius Travel Link, it can help you locate the best gas prices, find movie listings, get current traffic alerts, view the current weather map, get accurate ski conditions and see scores to current sports games.



If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the i (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

Traffic On Route and Traffic Nearby

Touch these buttons to identify traffic incidents on your route, nearby your vehicle's current location or near any of your favorite places, if programmed.

Fuel Prices

Touch this button to view fuel prices at stations close to your vehicle's location or on an active navigation route.

Movie Listings

Touch this button to view nearby movie theaters and their show times, if available.

Weather

Touch this button to view the nearby weather, current weather, or the five day forecast for the chosen area. Select **Map** to see the weather map, which can show storms, radar information, charts and winds. Select **Area** to select from a listing of weather locations.

Sports Info

Touch this button to view scores and schedules from a variety of sports. You can also save up to 10 favorite teams for easier access. The score automatically refreshes when a game is in progress.

Ski Conditions

Touch this button to view ski conditions for a specific area.

Sirius Travel Link Voice Commands



Press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands:



MyLincoln Touch™

"SIRIUS TRAVEL LINK"
"5-day weather forecast"
"Fuel prices"
"Movie listings"
"Sports headlines"*
"Sports schedules"*
"Sports scores"*
"Traffic"
"Weather"
"Weather map"
"Help"

* If you say "Sports headlines", "Sports schedules" or "Sports scores", you can then say any of the commands in the following chart.

Sports-related Commands*
"Baseball"
"College basketball"
"College football"
"Golf"
"MLS"
"My teams"
"NBA"
"NFL"
"NHL"
"WNBA"
"Help"

* If you want to hear headlines, schedules or scores from a particular sport, or your favorite team(s), say the sport (or team), then "headlines", "schedules" or "scores".

Additional sports-related voice commands
"Baseball headlines"
"Baseball schedule"
"Baseball scores"
"College basketball headlines"
"College basketball schedule"
"College basketball scores"
"College football headlines"
"College football schedule"
"College football scores"
"Golf headlines"
"Golf leaderboard"
"Golf schedule"
"MLS headlines"
"MLS schedule"
"MLS scores"
"Motor sports headlines"
"Motor sports order"

MyLincoln Touch™

Additional sports-related voice commands

"Motor sports schedule"
"My team headlines"
"My teams schedule"
"My teams scores"
"NBA headlines"
"NBA schedule"
"NBA scores"
"NFL headlines"
"NFL schedule"
"NFL scores"
"NHL headlines"
"NHL schedule"
"NHL scores"
"WNBA headlines"
"WNBA schedule"
"WNBA scores"
"Help"

Alerts



If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the i (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

Press **Alerts**, and then choose from any of the following services:

- **View** the complete message
- **Delete** the message
- **Delete All** messages

This screen displays any system messages (such as an SD card fault).

Note: *The system alerts you to any messages by turning the information icon yellow. After you read or delete the messages, the icon returns to white.*

Calendar



If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the i (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

Press **Calendar**. You can view the current calendar by day, week or month.

911 Assist (If Equipped)

WARNINGS



Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help, which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.



Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time, which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.



Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone, which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.

Note: *The SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on prior to the incident.*

MyLincoln Touch™

Note: Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the 911 Assist Privacy Notice later in this section for important information.

Note: If any user turns 911 Assist on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is turned off, either a voice message plays or a display message (or icon) comes on (or both) when your vehicle is started after a previously paired phone connects.

Note: Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.

If a crash deploys an airbag (excludes knee airbags and rear inflatable safety belts [if equipped]) or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC-equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone. You can learn more about the 911 Assist feature, visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 36). Important information regarding airbag deployment is in this chapter.

See **Roadside Emergencies** (page 207). Important information regarding the fuel pump shut-off is in this chapter.

Setting 911 Assist On



If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the i (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

Touch **Apps > 911 Assist**, then select **On**.



You can also access 911 Assist by:

- Pressing the Settings icon > **Settings > Phone > 911 Assist**, or
- Pressing the Settings icon > **Help > 911 Assist**.

To make sure that 911 Assist works properly:

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on prior to the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth-enabled and compatible phone to SYNC.

- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the United States, Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

In the Event of a Crash

Not all crashes deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (which would trigger 911 Assist); however, SYNC tries to contact emergency services if 911 Assist triggers. If a connected phone sustains damage or loses connection to SYNC, SYNC searches for, and tries to connect to, any available previously paired phone and tries to make the call to 911.

MyLincoln Touch™

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel."

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the 911 operator, and then the occupant(s) in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

911 Assist May Not Work If

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) previously paired or connected to the system are thrown from the vehicle.

911 Assist Privacy Notice

When you turn on 911 Assist, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not turn the feature on.

Vehicle Health Report (If Equipped)

WARNING



Always follow scheduled maintenance instructions, regularly inspect your vehicle, and seek repair for any damage or problem you suspect. Vehicle Health Report supplements, but cannot replace, normal maintenance and vehicle inspection. Vehicle Health Report only monitors certain systems electronically monitored by your vehicle and will not monitor or report the status of any other system, (such as brake lining wear). Failure to perform scheduled maintenance and regularly inspect your vehicle may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.

Note: This feature is only available in the United States.

Note: Your Vehicle Health Report feature requires activation prior to use. Visit www.SYNCMYRide.com to register. There is no fee or subscription associated with Vehicle Health Report, but you must register to use this feature.

Note: This feature may not function properly if you have enabled caller ID blocking on your cellular phone. Before running a report, review the Vehicle Health Report Privacy Notice.

Note: In order to allow a break-in period for your vehicle, you may not be able to create a Vehicle Health Report until your vehicle odometer has reached 200 miles.

Note: Cellular phone and SMS charges may apply when making a report.

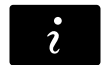
Register for Vehicle Health Report and set your report preferences at www.SYNCMYRide.com. After registering, you can request a Vehicle Health Report (inside your vehicle). Return to your account at www.SYNCMYRide.com to view your report. You can also choose for SYNC to remind you automatically to run reports at specific mileage intervals. Cellular phone airtime usage may apply when reporting.

MyLincoln Touch™

The system allows you to check your vehicle's overall health in the form of a diagnostic report card. The Vehicle Health Report contains valuable information, such as:

- Vehicle diagnostic information
- Scheduled maintenance
- Open recalls and Field Service Actions
- Items noted during vehicle inspections by your authorized dealer that still need servicing.

Making a Report



If you want to run a report by using the touchscreen, touch **Apps** > **Vehicle Health Report**.



To run a report by voice command, press the voice button on the steering wheel and, when prompted, say "Vehicle health report".

Vehicle Health Report Privacy Notice

When you create a Vehicle Health Report, Ford Motor Company may collect your cellular phone number (to process your report request) and diagnostic information about your vehicle. Certain versions or updates to Vehicle Health Report may also collect more vehicle information. Ford may use your vehicle information it collects for any purpose. If you do not want to disclose your cellular phone number or vehicle

information, do not run the feature or set up your Vehicle Health Report profile at www.SYNCMYride.com. See www.SYNCMYride.com (Vehicle Health Report Terms and Conditions, and Privacy Statement) for more information.

CLIMATE

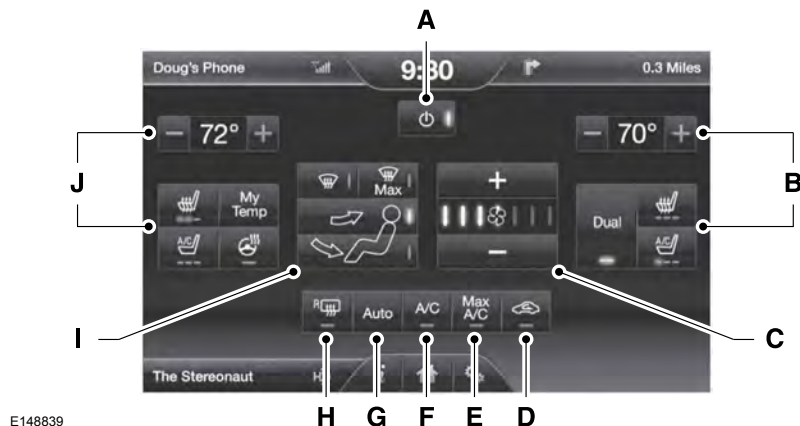
Touch the lower right corner on the touchscreen to access your climate control features. Depending on your vehicle line and option package, your climate screen may look different from this screen.

Note: You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See **Settings** (page 313).



Information Provided by:
360 DEALER
E N T E R P R I S E S

MyLincoln Touch™



- A **Power:** Touch the button to turn the system on and off. Switching off the climate control system prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.
- B **Passenger settings:**
 - Touch the **+** or **-** to increase or decrease the air temperature on the passenger side of the vehicle.
 - Touch the heated seat icon to turn the heated seat off and on (if equipped).
 - Touch the climate-controlled seat icon to turn the climate-controlled seat off and on (if equipped).
 - Touch **DUAL** to turn separate passenger side temperature controls off and on. When you turn off DUAL, the passenger side temperature changes to match the driver side temperature.

MyLincoln Touch™

Note: The passenger side temperature and the **DUAL** indicator automatically turn on when the passenger is adjusting their temperature control.

- C **Fan speed:** Touch **+** or **-** to increase or decrease the volume of air circulated in your vehicle.

Note: When the system is controlling the fan speed automatically, all the fan speed indicators turn off.

- D **Recirculated air:** Touch the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. When you select recirculated air, the air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior (when used with **A/C**) and may reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off automatically (or be prevented from turning on) in all airflow modes except **MAX A/C** to reduce risk of fogging.

- E **MAX A/C:** Touch the button to maximize cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

- F **A/C:** Touch the button to turn air conditioning compressor on or off. Use air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

Note: In certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even after you switch off the air conditioning with the **A/C** button.

- G **AUTO:** Touch the button to turn on automatic operation. Select the desired temperature using the temperature control. The system adjusts fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and selects outside air or recirculated air to heat or cool the vehicle in order to maintain the desired temperature. You can also use the **AUTO** button to turn off dual zone operation by touching and holding the button for more than two seconds.

- H **Heated rear window:** Turns the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 107).

- I **Air distribution control:** Touch these buttons to turn airflow from the windshield, instrument panel, or footwell vents on or off. The system can distribute air through any combination of these vents.

MAX Defrost: Touch the button to maximize defrosting. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed and the temperature dial returns to the full heat position. You can use this setting to defog or clear a thin covering of ice from the windshield. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select MAX Defrost.

MyLincoln Touch™

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when MAX Defrost is on.

Driver settings:

Touch the **+** or **-** to increase or decrease the air temperature on the passenger side of the vehicle.

Touch the heated seat icon to turn the heated seat off and on (if equipped).

Touch the climate-controlled seat icon to turn the climate-controlled seat off and on (if equipped).

Touch **MyTemp** to select your preset temperature setpoint. Touch and hold **MyTemp** to save a new preset temperature setpoint.

Touch the heated steering wheel icon to turn the heated steering wheel on and off (if equipped).

Note: If your vehicle is equipped with a wood-trimmed steering wheel, it does not heat between the 10 o'clock and 2 o'clock positions.

Climate Control Voice Commands



Press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands:

Climate control commands
"Climate automatic"
"Climate my temperature"
"Climate off"
"Climate on"

Climate control commands
"Climate temperature <15.5-29.5> degrees"
"Climate temperature <60-85> degrees"
"Help"

There are additional climate control commands but in order to access them, you have to say "Climate" first. When the system is ready to listen, you may say any of the following commands:

"CLIMATE"
"A/C off"
"A/C on"
"Automatic"

"CLIMATE"
"Defrost off"
"Defrost on"
"Dual off"
"Floor on"
"Fan decrease"
"Fan increase"
"MAX A/C off"
"MAX A/C on"
"My temp"
"Off"
"On"



Information Provided by:

DEALER
363

MyLincoln Touch™

"CLIMATE"
"Panel floor on"
"Panel on"
"Rear defrost off"
"Rear defrost on"
"Recirc off"
"Recirc on"
"Temperature"
"Temperature <15.5-29.5> degrees"
"Temperature <60-85> degrees"
"Temperature decrease"
"Temperature high"
"Temperature increase"
"Temperature low"
"Windshield floor on"
"Help"

* If you say "Temperature", you can then say any of the commands in the following chart.

"TEMPERATURE"
"<15.5-29.5> degrees"
"<60-85> degrees"
"High"
"Low"
"Help"

NAVIGATION (If Equipped)

Note: The navigation SD card must be in the SD card slot to operate the navigation system. If you need a replacement SD card, see an authorized dealer.

Note: The SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, just push the card in and release it. Do not attempt to pull the card out to remove it; this could cause damage.

Your navigation system is comprised of two main features, destination mode and map mode.

To set a destination, press the green corner of your touchscreen, then the **Dest** button when it appears. See **Setting a destination** later in this chapter.

To view the navigation map and your vehicle's current location, touch the green bar in the upper right-hand corner of the touchscreen, or, press **Dest**, then **Map**. See **Map mode** later in this chapter.

Setting a Destination

Press the green corner of your touchscreen, then the **Dest** button when it appears. Choose any of the following:

Destination
My Home
Favorites
Previous Destinations
Point of Interest
Emergency
Street Address
Intersection
City Center
Map
Edit Route Cancel Route

MyLincoln Touch™

1. Enter the necessary information into the highlighted text fields (in any order). For address destination entry, the **Go!** button appears once you enter all the necessary information. Pressing the **Go!** button makes the address location appear on the map. If you choose **Previous Destination**, the last 20 destinations you have selected appear.
2. Select **Set as Dest** to make this your destination. You can also choose to set this as a waypoint (have the system route to this point on the way to your current destination) or save it as a favorite. The system considers any **Avoid Areas** selections in its route calculation.
3. Choose from up to three different types of routes, and then select **Start Route**.
 - Fastest: Uses the fastest moving roads possible.
 - Shortest: Uses the shortest distance possible.
 - Eco Route: Uses the most fuel-efficient route.

You can cancel the route or have the system demo the route for you. Select **Route Prefs** to set route preferences like avoiding freeways, tollroads, ferries and car trains as well as to use or not use high-occupancy vehicle lanes. (High-occupancy vehicle lanes are also known as carpool or diamond lanes. People who ride in buses, vanpools or carpools use these lanes.)

Note: *If your vehicle is on a recognized road and you do not press the **Start Route** button, the system defaults to the Fastest Route option and begins guidance.*

During route guidance, you can press the talking bubble icon that appears in the upper right navigation corner (green bar) if you want the system to repeat route guidance information. When the system repeats the last guidance instruction, it updates the distance to the next guidance instruction, since it detects when the vehicle is moving.

Point of Interest (POI) Categories

Main categories
Food/Drink & Dining
Travel & Transportation
Financial

Main categories
Emergency
Community
Health & Medicine
Automotive
Shopping
Entertainment & Arts
Recreation & Sports
Government
Domestic Services

Subcategories
Restaurant
Golf
Parking
Home & Garden
Personal Care Services
Auto Dealership

MyLincoln Touch™

Subcategories
Govt Office
Public Transit
Education

To expand these listings, press the + in front of the listing.

The system also allows you to sort alphabetically, by distance or by cityseekr listings (if available).

cityseekr

Note: *cityseekr point of interest (POI) information is limited to approximately 912 cities (881 in the United States, 20 in Canada and 11 in Mexico).*



E142634

cityseekr, when available, is a service that provides more information about certain points of interest such as restaurants, hotels and attractions.

When you have selected a point of interest, the location and information appear, such as address and phone number. If cityseekr lists the point of interest, more information is available, such as a brief description, check-in and checkout times or restaurant hours.

Press **More Information** for a longer review, a list of services and facilities, the average room or meal price as well as the website. This screen displays the point of interest icon such as:



Hotel



Coffeehouse



Food & Drink



Nightlife



Attraction



This icon appears when your selection exists in multiple categories within the system.

When you are viewing more information for hotels, cityseekr also tells you if the hotel has certain services and facilities using icons, such as:

- Restaurant.
- Business center.
- Handicap facilities.

MyLincoln Touch™

- Laundry.
- Refrigerator.
- 24 hour room service.
- Fitness center.
- Internet access.
- Pool.
- Wi-fi.

For restaurants, cityseekr can provide information such as star rating, average cost, review, handicap access, hours of operation, and website address.

For hotels, cityseekr can provide information such as star rating, price category, review, check-in and checkout times, hotel service icons and website address.

Setting Your Navigation Preferences

Select settings for the system to take into account when planning your route.



Press the Settings icon > **Settings** > **Navigation**.

Map Preferences

Breadcrumbs

Display your vehicle's previously traveled route with white dots. Switch this feature **ON** or **OFF**.

Turn List Format

Have the system display your turn list **Top to Bottom** or **Bottom to Top**.

Parking POI Notification

Set the automatic parking point of interest notification. Switch this feature **ON** or **OFF**. When parking point of interest notification is on, the icons display on the map when you get close to your destination. This may not be very useful in dense areas, and may clutter the map when other points of interest display.

Route Preferences

Preferred Route

Choose to have the system display the Shortest, Fastest or most Ecological route first. If you set **Always Use Preferred Route** to **Yes**, the system uses the selected route type to calculate only one route to the desired destination.

Always Use Preferred Route

Bypass route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on preferred route setting.

Eco Time Penalty

Select a low, medium or high cost for the calculated Eco Route. The higher the setting, the longer the time allotment is for the route.

Avoid

These features allow you to choose to have the system avoid freeways, toll roads, ferries and car trains when planning your route. Switch these features **ON** or **OFF**.

Use HOV Lanes

Have the system use high-occupancy vehicle lanes, if available, when planning your route.

Navigation Preferences

Guidance Prompts

Have the system use **Voice & Tones** or **Tone Only** on your programmed route.

MyLincoln Touch™

Auto - Fill State/Province

Have the system automatically fill in the state and province based on the information already entered into the system. Switch this feature **ON** or **OFF**.

Traffic Preferences

Avoid Traffic Problems

Choose how you want the system to handle traffic problems along your route.

- **Automatic:** Have the system reroute you to avoid traffic incidents that develop and impact the current route. The system does not provide a traffic alert notification.
- **Manual:** Have the system always provide a traffic alert notification for traffic incidents along the planned route. You have a choice to accept or ignore the notification before making the route deviation.

Traffic Alert Notification

Have the system display traffic alert notifications.

Other traffic alert features allows you to turn on certain, or all, traffic icons on the map such as road work, incident, accidents and closed roads. Scroll down to view all the different types of alerts. Switch these features **ON** or **OFF**.

Avoid Areas

Choose areas which you want the system to avoid when calculating a route for you.

Press **Add** to program an entry. Once you make a selection, the system tries to avoid the area(s) if possible for all routes. To delete a selection, choose the listing on the screen. When the screen changes to **Avoid Areas Edit**, you can press **Delete** at the bottom right of the screen.

Map Mode

Press the green bar in the upper right area of the touchscreen to view map mode. Map mode shows advanced viewing comprised of both 2D city maps as well as 3D landmarks (when available).

2D city maps show detailed outlines of buildings, visible land use and land elements and detailed railway infrastructure for the most essential cities around the globe. These maps also contain features, such as town blocks, building footprints and railways.

3D landmarks appear as clear, visible objects that are typically recognizable and have a certain tourist value. The 3D landmarks appear in 3D map mode only. Coverage varies and improves with updated map releases.



E174016

Change the appearance of the map display by repeatedly pressing the arrow button in the upper left corner of the screen. It toggles between three different map modes: Heading up, North up and 3D.

MyLincoln Touch™



Heading up (2D map) always shows the direction of forward travel to be upward on the screen. This view is available for map scales up to 2.5 miles (4 kilometers). The system remembers this setting for larger map scales, but shows the map in North up only. If the scale returns below this level, the system restores Heading up.



North up (2D map) always shows the northern direction to be upward on the screen.



3D map mode provides an elevated perspective of the map. This viewing angle can be adjusted and the map can be rotated 180 degrees by touching the map twice, and then dragging your finger along the shaded bar with arrows at the bottom of the map.

View switches between full map, street list and exit view in route guidance.

Menu displays a pop-up box that allows direct access to navigation settings, View/Edit Route, SIRIUS Travel Link, Guidance Mute and Cancel Route.



Press the speaker button on the map to mute route guidance. When the light on the button illuminates, the feature is on. The speaker button appears on the map only when route guidance is active.



Re-center the map by pressing this icon whenever you scroll the map away from your vehicle's current location.

Auto Zoom

Press the green bar to access map mode, then select the **+** or **-** zoom button to bring up the zoom level and Auto buttons on the touchscreen. When you press **Auto**, Auto Zoom turns on and **Auto** displays in the bottom left corner of the screen in the map scale. The map zoom level then synchronizes with vehicle speed. The slower your vehicle is traveling, the farther in the map zooms in; the faster your vehicle is traveling, the farther the map zooms out. To switch off the feature, just press the **+** or **-** button again.

In 3D mode, rotate the map view by swiping your finger across the shaded bar with the arrows.

The ETA box under the zoom buttons appears when a route is active and displays the distance and time to your destination. If the button is pressed, a pop up appears with the destination listed (and waypoint if applicable) along with mileage and time to destination. You may also select to have either the estimated time to reach your destination or your estimated arrival time.

Map Icons



Vehicle mark shows the current location of your vehicle. It stays in the center of the map display, except when in scroll mode.



Scroll cursor allows you to scroll the map; the fixed icon is in the center of the screen. The map position closest to the cursor is in a window on the top center part of the screen.



Address book entry default icon(s) indicates the location on the map of an address book entry. This is the default symbol shown after the entry has been stored to the Address Book by any method other than the map. You can select from any of the 22 icons available. You can use each icon more than once.

MyLincoln Touch™



Home indicates the location on the map currently stored as the home position. You can only save one address from the Address Book as your Home entry. You cannot change this icon.



POI (Point Of Interest) icons indicate locations of any point of interest categories you choose to display on the map. You can choose to display three point of interest categories on the map at one time.



Starting point indicates the starting point of a planned route.



Waypoint indicates the location of a waypoint on the map. The number inside the circle is different for each waypoint and represents the position of the waypoint in the route list.



Destination symbol indicates the ending point of a planned route.



Next maneuver point indicates the location of the next turn on the planned route.



No GPS symbol indicates that insufficient GPS satellite signals are available for accurate map positioning. This icon may display under normal operation in an area with poor GPS access.

Quick-touch Buttons

When in map mode, touch anywhere on the map display to access the following options:

Set as Dest

Touch this button to select a scrolled location on the map as your destination. You may scroll the map by pressing your index finger on the map display. When you reach the desired location, simply let go and then touch **Set as Dest**.

Set as Waypoint

Touch this button to set the current location as a waypoint.

Save to Favorites

Touch this button to save the current location to your favorites.

POI Icons

Touch this button to select icons to display on the map. You can select up to three icons to display on the map at the same time. Turn these **ON** or **OFF**.

Cancel Route

Touch this button to cancel the active route.

View/Edit Route

Access these features when a route is active:

- View Route
- Edit Destination/Waypoints
- Edit Turn List
- Detour
- Edit Route Preferences
- Edit Traffic Preferences
- Cancel Route.

Nokia is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you may report them directly to Nokia by going to <http://mapreporter.navteq.com>. Nokia evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

MyLincoln Touch™

Navigation Map Updates

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase through your dealership, by calling 1-866-4NAVTEQ (1-866-462-8837) (in Mexico, call 01-800-557-5539) or going to www.navigation.com/sync. You need to specify the make and model of your vehicle to determine if there is an update available.

Navigation Voice Commands



When in navigation mode, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. After the tone, say any of the following commands:

Navigation system voice commands
"Cancel next waypoint" ¹
"Cancel route" ¹
"Destination" ²
"Destination <nametag>"
"Destination <POI category>"
"Destination favorites"
"Destination home"

Navigation system voice commands
"Destination intersection"
"Destination nearest <POI category>"
"Destination nearest POI"
"Destination play nametags"
"Destination POI"
"Destination POI category"
"Destination previous destination"
"Destination street address"
"Detour" ¹
"Navigation" ³
"Navigation voice volume decrease"
"Navigation voice volume increase"
"Repeat instruction" ¹
"Show 3D"
"Show heading up"
"Show map"
"Show north up"

Navigation system voice commands
"Show route" ¹
"Show turn list" ¹
"Voice guidance off"
"Voice guidance on"
"Where am I?"
"Zoom in"
"Zoom out"
"Help"

¹ These commands are only available when a navigation route is active.

² If you say "Destination", you can then say any command in the following "Destination" chart.

³ If you say "Navigation", you can then say any command in the following "Navigation" chart.

MyLincoln Touch™

"DESTINATION"
"<nametag>"
"<POI category>"
"Favorites"
"Home"
"Intersection"
"Nearest <POI category>"
"Nearest POI"
"Play nametags"
"POI category"
"Previous destination"
"Street address"
"Help"

"NAVIGATION"
"Destination"*
"Zoom city"
"Zoom country"

"NAVIGATION"
"Zoom minimum"
"Zoom maximum"
"Zoom province"
"Zoom state"
"Zoom street"
"Zoom to <distance>"
"Help"

* If you say "Destination", you can then say any command in the "Destination" chart.

One-shot Destination Street Address

When you say either "Navigation destination street address" or "Destination street address", the system asks you to say the full address. The system displays an example on-screen. You can then speak the address naturally, such as "One two three four Main Street, Anytown".



Information Provided by:
DEALER
372
- - - - -

Accessories

For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact an authorized dealer or visit our online store at **Accessories.Lincoln.com** (United States only).

Lincoln Custom Accessories are available for your vehicle through an authorized Lincoln dealer. Lincoln Motor Company will repair or replace any properly authorized dealer-installed Lincoln Custom Accessories found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories.

Lincoln Motor Company will warrant your vehicle through the warranty that provides the greatest benefit:

- 24 months, unlimited mileage.
- The remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact an authorized dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

Exterior style

- Moonroof deflectors.
- Side-window deflectors.
- Splash guards.
- Car cover*.

Interior style

- All-weather floor mats.
- Carpeted floor mats.
- Rear seat entertainment*.
- Sport pedals.

Lifestyle

- Ash cup (smoker's packages).
- Cargo organization and management.

Peace of mind

- Locking fuel plug for capless fuel system.
- Wheel locks.
- Remote start.
- Vehicle security.

*The accessory manufacturer designs, develops and therefore warrants Lincoln Licensed Accessories, and does not design or test these accessories to Lincoln Motor Company engineering requirements. Contact an authorized Lincoln dealer for the manufacturer's limited warranty details and request a copy of the Lincoln Licensed Accessories product limited warranty from the accessory manufacturer.

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Consult an authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems that are equipped with radio transmitters, for example, two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulations and should be installed only by an authorized dealer.

Accessories

- Mobile communications systems may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if their manufacturer did not design them specifically for automotive use.
- If you or an authorized Lincoln dealer add any non-Lincoln electrical or electronic accessories or components to your vehicle, you may adversely affect battery performance and durability. In addition, you may also adversely affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.



Information Provided by:

374
DEALER
PROCESS

Appendices

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

SYNC End User License Agreement (EULA)

- You have acquired a device ("DEVICE") that includes software licensed by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY") from an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation ("MS"). Those installed software products of MS origin, as well as associated media, printed

materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("MS SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The MS SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.

- The MS SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY. The additional software and systems of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("FORD SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The FORD SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.

- The MS SOFTWARE and/or FORD SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by third party software and service suppliers. The additional software and services of third party origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE, FORD SOFTWARE and THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE hereinafter collectively and individually will be referred to as "SOFTWARE".

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICE OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICE, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

Appendices

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICE and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.

- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICE and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.

- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY or MS may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Security Updates/Digital Rights Management:** Content owners use the WMDRM technology included in your DEVICE to protect their intellectual property, included copyrighted content. Portions of the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE use WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the SOFTWARE's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. This action does not affect unprotected content. When your DEVICE downloads licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.

Appendices

- **Consent to Use of Data:** You agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may collect and use technical information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may use this information solely to improve their products or to provide customized services or technologies to you. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.

- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICE.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components").

If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply.

If MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent make available Supplemental Components, and no other EULA terms are provided, then the terms of this EULA shall apply, except that the MS, Microsoft Corporation or affiliate entity providing the Supplemental Component(s) shall be the licensor of the Supplemental Component(s).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

Appendices

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The MS SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites through the use of the SOFTWARE. The third party sites are not under the control of MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent. Neither MS nor Microsoft Corporation nor their affiliates nor their designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICE operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and assumes any risk associated with the use of the DEVICE.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA: If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICE on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICE as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS: All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or their affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws

and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service providers, their affiliates and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments. For additional information, see <http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/>.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, third party software or service providers, their affiliates or suppliers.

Appendices

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Product support for the SOFTWARE is not provided by MS, its parent corporation Microsoft Corporation, or their affiliates or subsidiaries. For product support, please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICE. Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICE.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND/OR THEIR AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR ANY AMOUNT IN EXCESS OF U.S. TWO HUNDRED FIFTY DOLLARS (U.S. \$250.00).

- THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY EXPRESSLY BE PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

Adobe

Contains Adobe® [Flash® Player] or [AIR®] technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated. This [Licensee Product] contains [Adobe® Flash® Player] [Adobe® AIR®] software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated, Copyright ©1995-2009 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved. Adobe, Flash and AIR are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

End User Notice

Microsoft® Windows® Mobile for Automotive Important Safety Information

This system Ford SYNC contains software that is licensed to Manufacturer FORD MOTOR COMPANY by an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation pursuant to a license agreement. Any removal, reproduction, reverse engineering or other unauthorized use of the software from this system in violation of the license agreement is strictly prohibited and may subject you to legal action.

Read and follow instructions: Before using your Windows Automotive- based system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("User's Guide"). Not following precautions found in this User's Guide can lead to an accident or other serious consequences.

Keep User's Guide in vehicle: When kept in the vehicle, the User's Guide will be a ready reference for you and other users unfamiliar with the Windows Automotive-based system. Please make certain that before using the system for the first time, all persons have access to the User's Guide and read its instructions and safety information carefully.

WARNING



Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

Appendices

General Operation

Voice Command Control: Functions within the Windows Automotive-based system may be accomplished using only voice commands. Using voice commands while driving allows you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel.

Prolonged Views of Screen: Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Even occasional short scans to the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving task at a critical time.

Volume Setting: Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

Use of Speech Recognition Functions: Speech recognition software is inherently a statistical process which is subject to errors. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors.

Navigation Features: Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

Distraction Hazard: Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious consequences. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.

Let Your Judgment Prevail: Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

Route Safety: Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.

Potential Map Inaccuracy: Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.

Emergency Services: Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Appendices

TeleNav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the Telenav Software. Your use of the Telenav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the Telenav Software.

These terms and conditions represent the agreement ("Agreement") between you and Telenav, Inc. ("Telenav") with respect to the Telenav Software (including upgrades, modifications, or additions thereto) (collectively "Telenav Software"). All references herein to "you" and "your" means you, your employees, agents, and contractors, and any other entity on whose behalf you accept these terms and conditions, all of whom shall also be bound by this Agreement. Additionally, all of your account information, as well as other payment and personal information provided by you to Telenav (directly or through the use of the Telenav Software, is subject to Telenav's privacy policy located at <http://www.telenav.com>.

Telenav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the Telenav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the Telenav Software: (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely; (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the Telenav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions; (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the Telenav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked; (d) do not use the Telenav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;

(e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the Telenav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold Telenav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the Telenav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the Telenav Software, to provide Telenav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform Telenav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, Telenav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to

Appendices

use the Telenav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the Telenav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the Telenav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

You agree not to do any of the following: (a) reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the Telenav Software or any part thereof; (b) attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the Telenav Software without the prior express written consent of Telenav; (c) remove from the Telenav Software, or alter, any of Telenav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; (d) distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the Telenav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software; or (e) use the Telenav Software in any manner that (i) infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party, (ii) violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation,

including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or (iii) is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the Telenav Software without advanced written permission of Telenav.

4. Disclaimers

To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will Telenav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the Telenav Software. Telenav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the Telenav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the Telenav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the Telenav Software for critical navigation in areas where the

well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the Telenav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES

Appendices

(INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENNAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENNAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENNAV AND OF ALL OF TELENNAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENNAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the Telenav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial.

This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of laws provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both Telenav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the Telenav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to Telenav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the Telenav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Telenav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between Telenav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

Appendices

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, Telenav retains all right, title and interest in and to the Telenav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and Telenav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the Telenav Software, you consent to receive from Telenav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the Telenav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. Telenav may provide such Notices by posting them on Telenav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the Telenav Software.

8.4

Telenav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including," and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors:

End User License Agreement For Distribution By HERE For North America/APAC

The content provided ("Data") is licensed, not sold. By opening this package, or installing, copying, or otherwise using the Data, you agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. If you do not agree to the terms of this agreement, you are not permitted to install, copy, use, resell or transfer the Data. If you wish to reject the terms of this agreement, and have not installed, copied, or used the Data, you must contact your retailer or HERE North America, LLC (as defined below) within thirty (30) days of purchase for a refund of your purchase price. To contact HERE, please visit www.here.com.

Appendices

The Data is provided for your personal, internal use only and may not be resold. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms (this "End User License Agreement") and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and HERE and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. For purposes of these terms, "HERE" shall mean (a) HERE North America, LLC with respect to Data for the Americas and/or the Asia Pacific region and (b) HERE Europe B.V. for Data for Europe, the Middle East and/or Africa.

The Data includes certain information and related content provided under license to HERE from third parties and is subject to the applicable supplier terms and copyright notices set forth at the following URL: http://corporate.navteq.com/supplier_terms.html.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

License Limitations on Use:

You agree that your license to use this Data is limited to and conditioned on use for solely personal, noncommercial purposes, and not for service bureau, timesharing or other similar purposes. Except as otherwise set forth herein, you agree not to otherwise

reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

License Limitations on Transfer:

Your limited license does not allow transfer or resale of the Data, except on the condition that you may transfer the Data and all accompanying materials on a permanent basis if: (a) you retain no copies of the Data; (b) the recipient agrees to the terms of this End-User License Agreement; and (c) you transfer the Data in the exact same form as you purchased it by physically transferring the original media (e.g., the CD-ROM or DVD you purchased), all original packaging, all Manuals and other documentation. Specifically, Multi-disc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided to you and not as a subset thereof.

Additional License Limitations:

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by HERE in a separate written agreement, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, your license is conditioned on use of the Data as prescribed in this agreement, and you may not (a) use

this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with, or in communication with, including without limitation, cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital -assistants or PDAs.

Note: *This Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic Data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.*

No Warranty:

This Data is provided to you "as is", and you agree to use it at your own risk. HERE and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error -free.

Appendices

Disclaimer of Warranty:

HERE AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability:

HERE AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THIS DATA; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DATA, ANY DEFECT IN THIS DATA, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A

WARRANTY, EVEN IF HERE OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control:

You agree not to export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement:

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between HERE (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Severability:

You and HERE agree that if any portion of this agreement is found illegal or unenforceable, that portion shall be severed and the remainder of the Agreement shall be given full force and effect.

Severability:

You and HERE agree that if any portion of this agreement is found illegal or unenforceable, that portion shall be severed and the remainder of the Agreement shall be given full force and effect.

Appendices

Governing Law:

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois (for Data for the Americas and/or the Asia Pacific region) or The Netherlands (for Data for Europe, the Middle East and Africa), without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. For any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data ("Claims"), you agree to submit to the personal jurisdiction of (a) the State of Illinois for Claims related to Data for the Americas and/or the Asia Pacific region provided to you hereunder, and (b) The Netherlands for Data for Europe, the Middle East and/or Africa provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users:

If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in

accordance with this End-User License Agreement, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use", and be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR
(MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER)

NAME:

HERE

CONTRACTOR
(MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER)

ADDRESS:

425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60606.

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101

and is subject to the End User License Agreement under

which this Data was provided.

© 1987-2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright© 2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents #5,987,525, #6,061,680, #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDb are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Appendices

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device.

This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or

any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY



Appendices

ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER.

© Gracenote 2007.

Vehicle with SYNC only

FCC ID: KMHSG1P1

IC: 1422A-SG1P1

Vehicle with SYNC and MyFord Touch or MyLincoln Touch

FCC ID: KMHSYNCG2

IC: 1422A-SYNCG2

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING



Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Extended Service Plan (ESP)

PROTECT YOURSELF FROM THE RISING COST OF VEHICLE REPAIRS WITH A LINCOLN EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN.

SERVICE PLANS (U.S. Only)

Lincoln owners have discovered the powerful protection of Lincoln Extended Service Plan. It is the only extended service plan backed by Lincoln Motor Company, and provides peace of mind protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage.

Lincoln ESP Can Quickly Pay for Itself

One service bill – the cost of parts and labor – can easily exceed the price of your Lincoln Extended Service Plan. With Lincoln ESP, you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

Up to 1000+ Covered Vehicle Components

There are four Extended Service Plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your authorized dealer for details.

1. PremiumCARE - Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 1000 covered components, this plan is so complete that we generally only discuss what's not covered.

2. ExtraCARE - Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.
3. BaseCARE - Covers 84 components.
4. PowertrainCARE - Covers 29 critical components.

Lincoln Extended Service Plan is honored by all authorized Lincoln and Ford dealers in the U.S. and Canada. It is the only extended service plan authorized and backed by Lincoln Motor Company.

That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service at any Lincoln or Ford dealership.
- Repairs performed by factory trained technicians, using genuine parts.

Rental Car Reimbursement

1st day Rental Benefit

You take advantage of replacement transportation if your vehicle is at your authorized dealer for same day covered repairs.

Extended Rental Benefits

If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs, you are eligible for rental car coverage, including bumper to bumper warranty repairs, and Field Service Actions.

Roadside Assistance

Exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts.
- Out of fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Destination assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage and emergency transportation.

Transferable Coverage

If you sell your vehicle before your Lincoln Extended Service Plan coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. Whenever you sell your vehicle, prospective buyers may have a higher degree of confidence that vehicle was properly maintained with Lincoln ESP, thereby improving resale value.



Extended Service Plan (ESP)

Avoid the Rising Cost of Properly Maintaining Your Vehicle!

Lincoln Extended Service Plan also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers all scheduled maintenance, and select items that routinely wear out. The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about affording your vehicle maintenance. It covers regular checkups, routine inspections, preventive care and replacement of select items that require periodic attention for normal wear:

- Windshield wiper blades.
- Spark plugs (except in California).
- The clutch disc.
- Brake pads and linings.
- Shock absorbers.
- Belts and hoses.
- Diesel exhaust fluid replenishment.

Interest Free Finance Options Available

Take advantage of our interest free installment payment plan. Just a 10% down payment will provide you with an affordable, no interest, no fee payment program allowing you all the security and benefits Lincoln ESP has to offer while paying over time. You are pre-approved with no credit checks, no hassles! To learn more, call our Lincoln ESP specialists at 800-367-3377.

Complete the information below and mail to:

Ford ESP
P.O. Box 8072
Royal Oak, MI 48068-0039

SERVICE PLANS (CANADA ONLY)

You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Lincoln Extended Service Plan. Lincoln Extended Service Plan is the only service contract backed by Lincoln Motor Company of Canada, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, Lincoln Extended Service Plan provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement.
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items.

- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires.
- Roadside Assistance benefits.

There are several Lincoln Extended Service Plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental. When you purchase Lincoln Extended Service Plan, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada and the United States, provided by a network of participating authorized Lincoln Motor Company dealers.

Note: Repairs performed outside of Canada and the United States are not eligible for Lincoln Extended Service Plan coverage.

This information is subject to change. For more information, visit your local Lincoln of Canada dealer or www.Lincoln.ca to find the Lincoln Extended Service Plan that is right for you.

Scheduled Maintenance

GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

Why Maintain Your Vehicle?

Carefully following the maintenance schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it. Keep all receipts for completed maintenance with your vehicle.

We have established regular maintenance intervals for your vehicle based upon rigorous testing. It is important that you have your vehicle serviced at the proper times. These intervals serve two purposes; one is to maintain the reliability of your vehicle and the second is to keep your cost of owning your vehicle down.

It is your responsibility to have all scheduled maintenance performed and to make sure that the materials used meet the specifications identified in this owner's manual. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 290).

Failure to perform scheduled maintenance invalidates warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance.

Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?

Factory-Trained Technicians

Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored certification training to help them become experts on the operation of your vehicle. Ask your dealership about the training and certification their technicians have received.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft® Replacement Parts

Dealerships stock Ford, Motorcraft and Ford-authorized branded re-manufactured replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed our specifications. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide 24-month or unlimited mile (kilometer) parts and labor limited warranty.

If you do not use Ford authorized parts they may not meet our specifications and depending on the part, it could affect emissions compliance.

Convenience

Many dealerships have extended evening and Saturday hours to make your service visit more convenient and they offer one stop shopping. They can perform any services that are required on your vehicle, from general maintenance to collision repairs.

Note: *Not all dealers have extended hours or body shops. Please contact your dealer for details.*

Protecting Your Investment

Maintenance is an investment that pays dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To maintain the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, make sure you have scheduled maintenance performed at the designated intervals.

Your vehicle is equipped with the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor system, which displays a message in the information display at the proper oil change interval. This interval may be up to one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers).

Scheduled Maintenance

When the oil change message appears in the information display, it is time for an oil change. Make sure you perform the oil change within two weeks or 500 miles (800 kilometers) of the message appearing. Make sure you reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after each oil change. See **General Information** (page 88).

If your information display resets prematurely or becomes inoperative, you should perform the oil change interval at six months or 5000 miles (8000 kilometers) from your last oil change. Never exceed one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) between oil change intervals.

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple, complex, performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That is why it is important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

Ford Motor Company has recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. Ford Motor Company relies upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

We strongly recommend the use of only genuine Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized re-manufactured replacement parts engineered for your vehicle.

Additives and Chemicals

This owner's manual and the Ford Workshop Manual list the recommended additives and chemicals for your vehicle. We do not recommend using chemicals or additives not approved by us as part of your vehicle's normal maintenance. Please consult your warranty information.

Oils, Fluids and Flushing

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. However, a qualified expert, such as the factory-trained technicians at your dealership, should inspect discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating or foreign material contamination immediately.

Make sure to change your vehicle's oils and fluids at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance. It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system or using a Ford-approved flushing chemical.

Owner Checks and Services

Make sure you perform the following basic maintenance checks and inspections every month or at six-month intervals.

Scheduled Maintenance

Check every month
Engine oil level.
Function of all interior and exterior lights.
Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure.
Windshield washer fluid level.

Check every six months
Battery connections. Clean if necessary.
Body and door drain holes for obstructions. Clean if necessary.
Cooling system fluid level and coolant strength.
Door weatherstrips for wear. Lubricate if necessary.
Hinges, latches and outside locks for proper operation. Lubricate if necessary.
Parking brake for proper operation.
Safety belts and seat latches for wear and function.
Safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, airbag and safety belt) for operation.
Washer spray and wiper operation. Clean or replace blades as necessary.



Information Provided by:

394 DEALER

Scheduled Maintenance

Multi-Point Inspection

In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important to have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major

problems. We recommend having the following multi-point inspection performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help make sure your vehicle keeps running great.

Multi-Point inspection	
Accessory drive belt(s)	Hazard warning system operation
Battery performance	Horn operation
Engine air filter	Radiator, cooler, heater and air conditioning hoses
Exhaust system	Suspension components for leaks or damage
Exterior lamps operation	Steering and linkage
Fluid levels*; fill if necessary	Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure**
For oil and fluid leaks	Windshield for cracks, chips or pits
Half-shaft dust boots	Washer spray and wiper operation

* Brake, coolant recovery reservoir, automatic transmission and window washer

**If your vehicle is equipped with a temporary mobility kit, check the tire sealant expiration Use By date on the canister. Replace as needed.

Scheduled Maintenance

Be sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It is a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of your vehicle. Your checklist gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle.

NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor®

Your vehicle is equipped with an Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor that determines when you should change the engine oil based on how your vehicle is used. By using several important factors in its calculations, the monitor helps reduce the cost of owning your vehicle and reduces environmental waste at the same time.

This means you do not have to remember to change the oil on a mileage-based schedule. Your vehicle lets you know when an oil change is due by displaying **ENGINE OIL CHANGED DUE** or **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** in the information display.

The following table provides examples of vehicle use and its impact on oil change intervals. It is a guideline only. Actual oil change intervals depend on several factors and generally decrease with severity of use.

When to expect the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message	
Interval	Vehicle use and example
7500-10000 miles (12000-16000 km)	Normal
	Normal commuting with highway driving No, or moderate, load or towing Flat to moderately hilly roads No extended idling
5000-7499 miles (8000-11999 km)	Severe
	Moderate to heavy load or towing Mountainous or off-road conditions Extended idling



Scheduled Maintenance

When to expect the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message	
Interval	Vehicle use and example
	Extended hot or cold operation
3000-4999 miles (4800-7999 km)	Extreme
	Maximum load or towing Extreme hot or cold operation

Maintenance Intervals

At every oil change interval as indicated by the information display*
Change engine oil and filter.**
Rotate the tires.
Perform a multi-point inspection (recommended).
Inspect the automatic transmission fluid level. Consult your dealer for requirements.
Inspect the brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake linings, hoses and parking brake.
Inspect the engine cooling system strength and hoses.
Inspect the exhaust system and heat shields.
Inspect the rear axle and U-joints. Lubricate any areas with grease fittings (All-wheel drive vehicles).
Inspect the half-shaft boots.

Scheduled Maintenance

At every oil change interval as indicated by the information display*

Inspect the steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tire-rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints. Lubricate any areas with grease fittings (All-wheel drive vehicles).

Inspect the tires, tire wear and measure the tread depth.

Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.

* Do not exceed one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) between service intervals.

** Reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after engine oil and filter changes. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 239).

Other maintenance items¹

Every 20000 miles (32000 km)	Replace cabin air filter.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Replace engine air filter.
At 100000 miles (160000 km)	Change engine coolant. ²
Every 100000 miles (160000 km)	Replace spark plugs.
	Inspect accessory drive belt(s). ³



Information Provided by:

398

DEALER

Scheduled Maintenance

Other maintenance items ¹	
Every 150000 miles (240000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
	Replace accessory drive belt(s). ⁴

¹ Perform these maintenance items within 3000 miles (4800 kilometers) of the last engine oil and filter change. Do not exceed the designated distance for the interval.

² Initial replacement at six years or 100000 miles (160000 kilometers), then every three years or 50000 miles (80000 kilometers).

³ After initial inspection, inspect every other oil change until replaced.

⁴ If not replaced within the last 100000 miles (160000 kilometers).

SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

If you operate your vehicle **primarily** in any of the following conditions, you need to perform extra maintenance, as indicated. If you operate your vehicle **occasionally** under any of these conditions, it is not necessary to perform the extra maintenance. For specific recommendations, see your dealership service advisor or technician.

Perform the services shown in the following tables when specified or within 3000 mi (4,800 km) of the **OIL CHANGER REQUIRED** message appearing in the information display.

- **Example 1:** The **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** message comes on at 28,751 mi (46,270 km). Perform the 30000 mi (48,000 km) automatic transmission fluid replacement.
- **Example 2:** The **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** message has **not** come on, but the odometer reads 30000 mi (48,000 km) (for example, the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor was reset at 25000 mi (40,000 km)). Perform the engine air filter replacement.

Scheduled Maintenance

Towing a trailer or using a car-top carrier	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by information display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	Inspect and lubricate U-joints.
Every 30000 mi (48,000 km)	See axle maintenance items under Exceptions .
	Change automatic transmission fluid.
Every 60000 mi (96,000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

Extensive idling or low-speed driving for long distances, as in heavy commercial use (such as delivery, taxi, patrol car or livery)	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by information display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 30000 mi (48,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
Every 60000 mi (96,000 km)	Replace spark plugs.



Information Provided by:
DEALER
 400

Scheduled Maintenance

Operating in dusty or sandy conditions (such as unpaved or dusty roads)	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 5000 mi (8,000 km)	Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.
	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth.
Every 5000 mi (8,000 km) or six months	Change engine oil and filter.*
	Perform multi-point inspection.
Every 30000 mi (48,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.

*Reset your Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after engine oil and filter changes.

Exclusive use of E85 (flex fuel vehicles only)	
Every oil change	If ran exclusively on E85, fill the fuel tank full with regular unleaded fuel.

Exceptions

There are several exceptions to the Normal Schedule:

Axle Maintenance

Change the axle fluid anytime an axle is submerged in water.

Scheduled Maintenance

California Fuel Filter Replacement

If you register your vehicle in California, the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item does not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability before the completion of your vehicle's useful life. Ford Motor Company, however, urges you to have all recommended maintenance services performed at the specified intervals and to record all vehicle service.

Hot Climate Oil Change Intervals

Vehicles operating in the Middle East, North Africa, Sub-Saharan Africa or locations with similar climates using an American Petroleum Institute (API) Certified for Gasoline Engines (Certification mark) oil of SM or SN quality, the normal oil change interval is 3000 mi (4,800 km).

If the available API SM or SN oils are not available, then the oil change interval is 1800 mi (2,900 km).

Engine Air Filter and Cabin Air Filter Replacement

The life of the engine air filter and cabin air filter is dependent on exposure to dusty and dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions require frequent inspection and replacement of the engine air filter and cabin air filter.

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE RECORD

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	



Information Provided by:
DEALER
402

Scheduled Maintenance

☐ Repair Order #:

☐ Distance:

☐ Engine hours (optional):

☐ Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

☐ Signature:

☐ Repair Order #:

☐ Distance:

☐ Engine hours (optional):

☐ Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

☐ Signature:

Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/> Signature:

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/> Signature:



Information Provided by:
DEALER
PROCESS

404

Scheduled Maintenance

☐ Repair Order #:

☐ Distance:

☐ Engine hours (optional):

☐ Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

☐ Signature:

☐ Repair Order #:

☐ Distance:

☐ Engine hours (optional):

☐ Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

☐ Signature:

Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	



Information Provided by:
DEALER
406

Scheduled Maintenance

☐ Repair Order #:

☐ Distance:

☐ Engine hours (optional):

☐ Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

☐ Signature:

☐ Repair Order #:

☐ Distance:

☐ Engine hours (optional):

☐ Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

☐ Signature:

Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	



Information Provided by:
DEALER
408

Scheduled Maintenance

☐ Repair Order #:

☐ Distance:

☐ Engine hours (optional):

☐ Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

☐ Signature:

☐ Repair Order #:

☐ Distance:

☐ Engine hours (optional):

☐ Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

☐ Signature:

Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	



Information Provided by:
DEALER
PROCESS

Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/> Signature:

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/> Signature:



Information Provided by:

DEALER
411
REPAIR CENTERS

Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	



Information Provided by:
DEALER
PROCESS

Index

A		
A/C		
See: Climate Control.....	105	
About This Manual.....	7	
Protecting the Environment.....	7	
ABS		
See: Brakes.....	147	
ABS driving hints		
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock		
Brakes.....	147	
Accessories.....	373	
Exterior style.....	373	
Interior style.....	373	
Lifestyle.....	373	
Peace of mind.....	373	
Accessories		
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	11	
ACC		
See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....	164	
Active Park Assist.....	155	
Automatic Steering into Parking Space.....	157	
Deactivating the Park Assist Feature.....	158	
Troubleshooting the System.....	158	
Using Active Park Assist.....	156	
Adaptive Headlamps.....	75	
Adjusting the Headlamps.....	251	
Horizontal Aim Adjustment.....	252	
Vertical Aim Adjustment.....	251	
Adjusting the Pedals.....	68	
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	65	
Easy Entry and Exit Feature.....	65	
Memory Feature.....	65	
AFS		
See: Adaptive Headlamps.....	75	
Airbag Disposal.....	44	
Air Conditioning		
See: Climate Control.....	105	
Alarm		
See: Anti-Theft Alarm.....	64	
All-Wheel Drive.....	142	
Ambient Lighting.....	77	
Anti-Theft Alarm.....	64	
Arming the Alarm.....	64	
Disarming the Alarm.....	64	
Appendices.....	375	
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	86	
Headlamps On Warning Chime.....	87	
Key in Ignition Warning Chime.....	86	
Keyless Warning Alert.....	87	
Parking Brake On Warning Chime.....	87	
Audio Control.....	65	
Seek and Media	66	
Audio System.....	299	
General Information.....	299	
Audio Unit.....	300	
Autolamps.....	71	
Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps.....	72	
Automatic Climate Control.....	105	
Automatic High Beam Control.....	74	
Activating the System.....	74	
Manually Overriding the System.....	75	
Automatic Transmission.....	139	
Automatic Transmission Adaptive		
Learning.....	141	
Brake-Shift Interlock.....	140	
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or		
Snow.....	141	
SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission.....	139	
Understanding the Positions of Your		
Automatic Transmission.....	139	
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check.....	244	
6F50/6F55 Transmission.....	244	
Autowipers.....	69	
Auxiliary Power Points.....	123	
110 Volt AC Power Point.....	123	
12 Volt DC Power Point.....	123	
Locations.....	123	
AWD		
See: All-Wheel Drive.....	142	
B		
Blind Spot Information System.....	176	
Blind Spot Information System (BLIS™) with		
Cross Traffic Alert.....	176	
Bonnet Lock		
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	234	
Booster Seats.....	21	
Types of Booster Seats.....	22	
Brake Fluid Check.....	247	
Brakes.....	147	
General Information.....	147	
Breaking-In.....	204	

Index

Bulb Specification Chart.....	253
-------------------------------	-----

C

Cabin Air Filter.....	108
California Proposition 65.....	11
Capacities and Specifications.....	290
Technical Specifications.....	294
Car Wash	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	257
Center Console.....	125
Changing a Bulb.....	252
Lamp Assembly Condensation.....	252
Replacing Brake, Tail, Rear Direction Indicator and Reverse Lamp Bulbs.....	253
Replacing Fog Lamp Bulbs (If Equipped).....	253
Replacing Front Parking, Direction Indicator and Sidemarkers Bulbs.....	253
Replacing HID Headlamp Bulbs.....	252
Replacing High-mount Brake Lamp Bulbs.....	253
Replacing the License Plate Lamp Bulb.....	253
Changing a Fuse.....	232
Fuses.....	232
Changing a Road Wheel.....	283
Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information.....	283
Stowing the flat tire.....	287
Tire Change Procedure.....	285
Changing the 12V Battery.....	248
Battery Management System (If Equipped).....	250
Changing the Engine Air Filter.....	255
3.5L EcoBoost Engine.....	255
3.7L Engine.....	255
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	250
Checking MyKey System Status.....	53
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	250
Child Restraint and Safety Belt	
Maintenance.....	33
Child Safety.....	14
General Information.....	14
Child Safety Locks.....	25
Left-Hand Side.....	26
Right-Hand Side.....	26
Child Seat Positioning.....	24
Cleaning Leather Seats.....	260
Cleaning Products.....	257
Cleaning the Alloy Wheels.....	261
Cleaning the Engine.....	258
Cleaning the Exterior.....	257
Exterior Chrome Parts.....	258
Exterior Plastic Parts.....	258
Stripes or Graphics.....	258
Underbody.....	258
Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens.....	260
Cleaning the Interior.....	259
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades.....	259
Clearing All MyKeys.....	51

Climate.....	360
Climate Control Voice Commands.....	363
Climate Control.....	105
Climate Controlled Seats.....	115
Cooled Seats.....	115
Collision Warning System.....	182
PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION.....	182
Coolant Check	
See: Engine Coolant Check.....	240
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....	43
Creating a MyKey.....	51
Programming/Changing Configurable Settings.....	51
Cruise Control.....	66
Principle of Operation.....	163
Type 1.....	66
Type 2.....	66
Cruise control	
See: Using Cruise Control.....	163
Customer Assistance.....	212

D

Data Recording.....	9
Event Data Recording.....	9
Service Data Recording.....	9
Daytime Running Lamps.....	73
Type 1 - Conventional (Non-Configurable).....	73
Type 2 - Configurable.....	73
Direction Indicators.....	76
Lane Change.....	76

Index

Drive Control.....	185
LINCOLN DRIVE CONTROL.....	185
Driver Alert.....	171
Using Driver Alert.....	171
Driver and Passenger Airbags.....	37
Children and Airbags.....	38
Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment.....	37
Driving Aids.....	171
Driving Hints.....	204
Driving Through Water.....	204
DRL See: Daytime Running Lamps.....	73

E

Economical Driving.....	204
Emission Control System.....	136
On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II).....	137
Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) Testing.....	138
End User License Agreement.....	375
SYNC End User License Agreement (EULA).....	375
Engine Block Heater.....	129
Using the Engine Block Heater.....	130

Engine Coolant Check.....	240
Adding Engine Coolant.....	241
Checking the Engine Coolant.....	241
Recycled Engine Coolant.....	242
Severe Climates.....	242
What You Should Know About Fail-Safe Cooling.....	242
Engine Immobilizer See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	63
Engine Oil Check.....	239
Adding Engine Oil.....	240
Engine Oil Dipstick.....	239
Engine Specifications.....	290
Drivebelt Routing.....	290
Entertainment.....	325
A/V Inputs.....	342
AM/FM Radio.....	327
Bluetooth Audio.....	342
Browsing Device Content.....	326
CD.....	337
SD Card Slot and USB Port.....	338
Sirius® Satellite Radio (If Activated).....	333
Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information.....	342

Essential Towing Checks.....	200
Before Towing a Trailer.....	201
Hitches.....	200
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft (PWC).....	201
Safety Chains.....	200
Trailer Brakes.....	200
Trailer Lamps.....	200
When Towing a Trailer.....	201
Event Data Recording See: Data Recording.....	9
Export Unique Options.....	13
Extended Service Plan (ESP).....	390
SERVICE PLANS (CANADA ONLY).....	391
SERVICE PLANS (U.S. Only).....	390
Exterior Mirrors.....	79
Auto-Dimming Feature.....	79
Blind Spot Monitor.....	80
Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors.....	79
Heated Exterior Mirrors.....	79
Integrated Blind Spot Mirrors.....	79
Memory Mirrors.....	79
Power Exterior Mirrors.....	79

F

Fastening the Safety Belts.....	28
Safety Belt Extension Assembly.....	30
Safety Belt Locking Modes.....	29
Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy.....	28
Floor Mats.....	205

Index

Fog Lamps - Front	
See: Front Fog Lamps.....	75
Foot Pedals	
See: Adjusting the Pedals.....	68
Front Fog Lamps.....	75
Front Passenger Sensing System.....	38
Fuel and Refueling.....	131
Fuel Consumption.....	135
Calculating Fuel Economy.....	136
Filling the Tank.....	135
Fuel Filter.....	248
Fuel Quality.....	132
Choosing the Right Fuel.....	132
Octane Recommendations.....	132
Fuel Shutoff.....	208
Fuses.....	218
Fuse Specification Chart.....	218
Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel.....	226
Power Distribution Box.....	218

G

Garage Door Opener	
See: Universal Garage Door Opener.....	119
Gauges.....	83
General Information on Radio	
Frequencies.....	45
Intelligent Access.....	45

General Maintenance Information.....	392
Multi-Point Inspection.....	395
Owner Checks and Services.....	393
Protecting Your Investment.....	392
Why Maintain Your Vehicle?.....	392
Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?.....	392
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada.....	215
Getting the Services You Need.....	212
Away From Home.....	212

H

Handbrake	
See: Parking Brake.....	148
Hazard Warning Flashers.....	208
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	73
Head Restraints.....	109
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	110
Tilting Head Restraints.....	111
Heated Steering Wheel.....	67
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	107
Heated Exterior Mirror.....	107
Heated Rear Window.....	107
Heating	
See: Climate Control.....	105
Hill Start Assist.....	148
Switching the System On and Off.....	149
Using Hill Start Assist.....	148

Hints on Controlling the Interior	
Climate.....	106
Cooling the Interior Quickly.....	107
General Hints.....	106
Heating the Interior Quickly.....	107
Recommended Settings for Cooling.....	107
Recommended Settings for Heating.....	107
Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather.....	107
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	147
Hood Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	234

I

In California (U.S. Only).....	213
Information Display Control.....	67
Cluster Display Control Features.....	67
Information Displays.....	88
General Information.....	88
Information.....	351
911 Assist.....	357
Alerts.....	357
Calendar.....	357
Sirius Travel Link.....	355
SYNC Services (If Equipped, United States Only).....	352
Vehicle Health Report.....	359

Index

Information Messages.....	94
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	95
AdvanceTrac™.....	95
Alarm.....	95
Automatic Engine Shutdown.....	96
AWD.....	96
Battery and Charging System.....	97
Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System.....	97
Brake System.....	98
Collision Warning System.....	98
Doors and Locks.....	99
Fuel.....	99
Keys and Intelligent Access.....	99
Lane Keeping System.....	100
Maintenance.....	101
MyKey.....	101
Park Aid.....	102
Power Steering.....	103
Seats.....	103
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	104
Transmission.....	104
Installing Child Seats.....	16
Child Seats.....	16
Using Lap and Shoulder Belts.....	16
Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH).....	19
Using Tether Straps.....	20
Instrument Cluster.....	83
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	72

Interior Lamps.....	76
Front Row Map Lamps.....	76
Second Row Map Lamps.....	77
Interior Luggage Compartment Release.....	61
Interior Mirror.....	80
Auto-Dimming Mirror.....	81
Introduction.....	7

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	209
Connecting the Jumper Cables.....	209
Jump Starting.....	210
Preparing Your Vehicle.....	209
Removing the Jumper Cables.....	210

K

Keyless Entry.....	59
SECURICODE™ KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD.....	59
Keyless Starting.....	126
Ignition Modes.....	126
Keys and Remote Controls.....	45

L

Lane Keeping System.....	172
Switching the System On and Off.....	172

Lighting Control.....	71
Headlamp Flasher.....	71
High Beams.....	71
Lighting.....	71
Lincoln Automotive Financial Services.....	11
Load Carrying.....	187
Load Limit.....	187
Special Loading Instructions for Owners of Pick-up Trucks and Utility-type Vehicles.....	197
Vehicle Loading - with and without a Trailer.....	187
Locking and Unlocking.....	56
Activating Intelligent Access	56
Autolock Feature (If Enabled).....	57
Battery Saver.....	58
Illuminated Entry.....	58
Illuminated Exit.....	58
Luggage Compartment Release.....	58
Power Door Locks.....	56
Remote Control.....	56
Smart Unlocks	57
Locks.....	56
Lug Nuts See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	283

M

Maintenance.....	234
General Information.....	234
Media Hub.....	302

Index

Memory Function.....	114
Easy Entry and Exit Feature.....	115
Linking a Preset Position to Your Remote Control or Intelligent Access Key.....	114
Saving a Preset Position.....	114
Message Center	
See: Information Displays.....	88
Mirrors	
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	107
See: Windows and Mirrors.....	78
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	12
Moonroof.....	81
Bounce-Back.....	82
Opening and Closing the Moonroof.....	82
Opening and Closing the Sunscreen.....	82
Venting the Moonroof.....	82
Motorcraft Parts.....	291
MyKey Troubleshooting.....	54
MyKey™.....	50
Principle of Operation.....	50
MyLincoln Touch™.....	303
General Information.....	303

N

Navigation.....	364
cityseekr.....	366
Map Mode.....	368
Navigation Map Updates.....	371
Navigation Voice Commands.....	371
Point of Interest (POI) Categories.....	365
Quick-touch Buttons.....	370
Setting a Destination.....	364
Setting Your Navigation Preferences.....	367
Normal Scheduled Maintenance.....	396
Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor®.....	396
Maintenance Intervals.....	397

O

Oil Change Indicator Reset.....	240
Oil Check	
See: Engine Oil Check.....	239
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	234
Ordering Additional Owner's Literature.....	216
Obtaining a French Owner's Manual.....	216
Overhead Console.....	125

P

Parking Aid.....	153
Front Sensing System.....	154
Rear Sensing System.....	153
Parking Aids.....	153

Parking Brake.....	148
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	63
SecuriLock.....	63
PATS	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	63
Pedals.....	68
Perchlorate.....	11
Personal Safety System™.....	35
How Does the Personal Safety System Work?.....	35
Phone.....	344
Making Calls.....	346
Pairing Subsequent Phones.....	346
Pairing Your Phone for the First Time.....	345
Phone Menu Options.....	347
Phone Settings.....	348
Phone Voice Commands.....	349
Receiving Calls.....	346
Text Messaging.....	347
Post-Crash Alert System.....	211
Power Door Locks	
See: Locking and Unlocking.....	56
Power Seats.....	111
Multi-Contour Front Seats With Active Motion (If Equipped).....	113
Power Lumbar.....	113
Power Steering Fluid Check.....	247

Index

Power Windows.....	78
Accessory Delay.....	79
Bounce-Back.....	78
Global Opening.....	78
One-Touch Down.....	78
One-Touch Up.....	78
Window Lock.....	79

R

Rear Seat Armrest.....	117
Armrest pass-through.....	117
Rear View Camera.....	160
Using the Rear View Camera System.....	160
Rear View Camera	
See: Rear View Camera.....	160
Recommended Towing Weights.....	199
Refueling.....	134
Easy Fuel™ Capless Fuel System.....	134
Remote Control.....	46
Car Finder.....	47
Intelligent Access Key.....	46
Remote Start.....	47
Replacing the Battery.....	46
Sounding a Panic Alarm.....	47
Remote Start.....	108
Automatic Settings.....	108
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	261

Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	11
Collision Repairs.....	12
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs.....	11
Warranty on Replacement Parts.....	12
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	48
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only).....	217
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only).....	217
Roadside Assistance.....	207
Vehicles Sold In Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance.....	207
Vehicles Sold In Canada: Using Roadside Assistance.....	208
Vehicles Sold In the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance.....	207
Vehicles Sold In the United States: Using Roadside Assistance.....	207
Roadside Emergencies.....	207
Running-In	
See: Breaking-In.....	204
Running Out of Fuel.....	132
Refilling With a Portable Fuel Container.....	133

S

Safety Belt Height Adjustment.....	30
Safety Belt Minder.....	32
Belt-Minder™.....	32
Safety Belts.....	27
Principle of Operation.....	27

Safety Belt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime.....	31
Conditions of operation.....	31
Safety Canopy™.....	41
Safety Precautions.....	131
Scheduled Maintenance Record.....	402
Scheduled Maintenance.....	392
Seats.....	109
Security.....	63
Settings.....	313
Clock.....	314
Display.....	314
Settings.....	316
Sound.....	315
Vehicle.....	315
Side Airbags.....	40
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	109
Snow Chains	
See: Using Snow Chains.....	279
Special Notices.....	12
New Vehicle Limited Warranty.....	12
Special Instructions.....	12
Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance.....	399
Exceptions.....	401
Speed Control	
See: Cruise Control.....	163
Stability Control.....	151
Principle of Operation.....	151

Index

Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	127
Automatic Engine Shutdown.....	128
Failure to Start.....	128
Fast Restart.....	127
Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes.....	129
Important Ventilating Information.....	129
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....	129
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....	128
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	126
General Information.....	126
Steering.....	181
Electric Power Steering.....	181
Steering Wheel.....	65
Storage Compartments.....	125
Sunroof	
See: Moonroof.....	81
Sun Shades.....	81
Sun Visors.....	81
Illuminated Vanity Mirror.....	81
Supplementary Restraints System.....	36
Principle of Operation.....	36
Symbols Glossary.....	7

T

Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	290
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only).....	214

Tire Care.....	264
Glossary of Tire Terminology.....	265
Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading.....	264
Information Contained on the Tire	
Sidewall.....	266
Temperature A B C.....	265
Traction AA A B C.....	265
Treadwear.....	264
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	279
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	280
Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System	281
Tires	
See: Wheels and Tires.....	264
Towing a Trailer.....	198
Load Placement.....	198
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....	202
Emergency Towing.....	202
Recreational Towing.....	203
Towing.....	198
Traction Control.....	150
Principle of Operation.....	150
Transmission Code Designation.....	293
Transmission.....	139
Transmission	
See: Transmission.....	139
Transporting the Vehicle.....	202

U

Under Hood Overview - 3.5L Ecoboost™	236
Under Hood Overview - 3.7L.....	238
Engine Shield.....	239
Universal Garage Door Opener.....	119
HomeLink Wireless Control System.....	119
Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....	164
Blocked Sensor.....	169
Changing the Set Speed.....	167
Detection Issues.....	168
Disengaging Adaptive Cruise Control.....	166
Following a Vehicle.....	165
Hilly Condition Usage.....	167
Low Speed Automatic Cancellation.....	167
Overriding Adaptive Cruise Control.....	167
Resuming the Set Speed.....	167
Setting Adaptive Cruise Control.....	164
Setting a Speed.....	164
Setting the Gap Distance.....	165
Switching the System Off.....	167
Switching to Normal Cruise Control.....	170
Using All-Wheel Drive.....	142
Driving In Special Conditions With All-Wheel Drive (AWD).....	142
Using Cruise Control.....	163
Switching Cruise Control Off.....	163
Switching Cruise Control On.....	163
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems.....	54
Using Snow Chains.....	279

Index

Using Stability Control.....	152
AdvanceTrac®	152
Using Traction Control.....	150
Switching the System Off Using a	
Switch.....	150
Switching the System Off Using the	
Information Display Controls.....	150
System Indicator Lights and Messages.....	150
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program	
(Canada Only).....	215

V

Vehicle Care.....	257
General Information.....	257
Vehicle Certification Label.....	292
Vehicle Identification Number.....	291
Vehicle Storage.....	262
Battery.....	263
Body.....	262
Brakes.....	263
Cooling system.....	262
Engine.....	262
Fuel system.....	262
General.....	262
Miscellaneous.....	263
Removing Vehicle From Storage.....	263
Tires.....	263
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control.....	105
VIN	
See: Vehicle Identification Number.....	291

Voice Control.....	66
--------------------	----

W

Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	84
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	84
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	84
Battery.....	84
Brake System.....	84
Cruise Control.....	84
Direction Indicator.....	84
Door Ajar.....	84
Engine Coolant Temperature.....	85
Engine Oil.....	85
Fasten Safety Belt.....	85
Front Airbag.....	85
Front Fog Lamps.....	85
Grade Assist.....	85
Heads Up Display.....	85
High Beam.....	85
Low Fuel Level.....	85
Low Tire Pressure Warning.....	85
Low Washer Fluid.....	85
Parking Lamps.....	86
Powertrain Fault.....	86
Service Engine Soon.....	86
Stability Control.....	86
Stability Control Off.....	86
Washer Fluid Check.....	248
Washers	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	257
See: Wipers and Washers.....	69

Waxing.....	258
Wheel Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	283
Wheels and Tires.....	264
Technical Specifications.....	288
Windows and Mirrors.....	78
Windshield Washers.....	70
Windshield Wipers.....	69
Wipers and Washers.....	69